2024 ■ VOLUME 72, Nº 3

CANADIAN TAX JOURNAL
REVUE FISCALE CANADIENNE

CTF FCF
CANADIAN TAX FOUNDATION
FONDATION CANADIENNE DE FISCALITÉ

CANADIAN TAX JOURNAL EDITORIAL BOARD/ COMITÉ DE RÉDACTION DE LA REVUE FISCALE CANADIENNE

Editors/Rédacteurs en chef

Kim Brooks
Dalhousie University

Kevin Milligan
University of British Columbia

Daniel Sandler
EY Law LLP

Practitioners and Academics/Fiscalistes et Universitaires

Allison Christians
McGill University

David G. Duff
University of British Columbia

Luc Godbout
Université de Sherbrooke

Kenneth J. Klassen
University of Waterloo

Wojciech Kopczuk
Columbia University

Rick Krever
The University of Western Australia

Angelo Nikolakakis
EY Law LLP, Montreal

Shawn D. Porter
Deloitte LLP, Toronto

Diane Ring
Boston College

Lindsay Tedds
University of Calgary

FEATURE EDITORS/RÉDACTEURS DE CHRONIQUES

Corporate Tax Planning
Mark Brender, Osler LLP, Montreal
Brian Carr, Thorsteinssons LLP, Toronto
Michael Smith, Deloitte LLP, Calgary
Christopher Steeves, Fasken Martineau LLP, Toronto

Current Cases
Ryan Morris, WeirFoulds LLP, Toronto
Andrew Stirling, McMillan LLP, Toronto

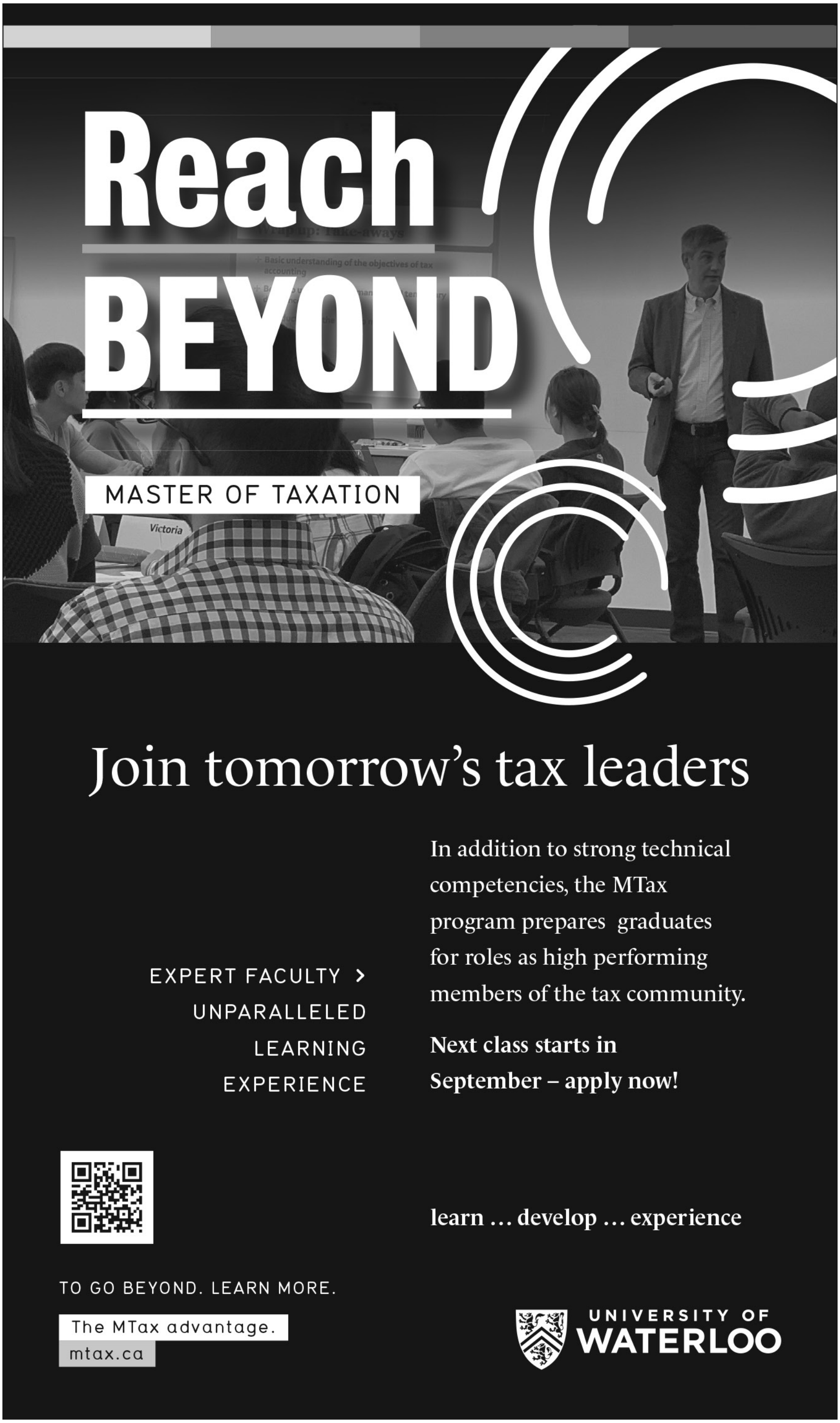
Current Tax Reading
David G. Duff, University of British Columbia, Vancouver
Jinyan Li, York University, Toronto
Alan Macnaughton, University of Waterloo
Michael Veall, McMaster University, Hamilton

Finances of the Nation
Jennifer Robson, Carleton University
Trevor Tombe, University of Calgary

International Tax Planning
Ian Bradley, PwC LLP, Toronto
Ken Buttenham, PwC LLP, Toronto

Personal Tax Planning
Sonia Gandhi, KPMG LLP, Toronto
Dino Infanti, KPMG LLP, Vancouver
Bessy Triantafyllos, Deloitte LLP, Toronto
Chris Watt Bickley, Deloitte LLP, Ottawa

Selected US Tax Developments
Peter Glicklich, Davies Ward Phillips & Vineberg LLP, New York
Michael Miller, Roberts & Holland LLP, New York and Washington, DC


Reach
BEYOND
MASTER OF TAXATION
Join tomorrow's tax leaders
EXPERT FACULTY >
UNPARALLELED
LEARNING
EXPERIENCE
In addition to strong technical competencies, the MTax program prepares graduates for roles as high performing members of the tax community.
Next class starts in September – apply now!
learn … develop … experience
TO GO BEYOND. LEARN MORE.
The MTax advantage.
mtax.ca
UNIVERSITY OF
WATERLOO

Call for Book Proposals

The Canadian Tax Foundation, an independent, not-for-profit research and educational organization, is seeking proposals for books in the areas of taxation and public finance.

Since its inception in 1945, the Foundation has published many books and articles on a wide range of subjects within its areas of interest. The Foundation seeks proposals for research projects that will

- result in a book on a single topic of interest in the area of taxation or public finance;
- be undertaken by an experienced researcher who has expertise in an area of taxation or public finance; and
- be carried out within a time frame that is reasonable, given the nature of the project.

Projects selected by the Foundation may qualify for its full or partial financial support of the research and for its underwriting of the publication costs. The Foundation retains the absolute right at its sole discretion to choose whether to support a given proposal or to publish a project.

Interested parties should send a brief written outline of a proposal, for initial consideration by the Foundation, to:

Heather Evans
Executive Director and Chief Executive Officer
Canadian Tax Foundation / Fondation canadienne de fiscalité
145 Wellington Street West, Suite 1400
Toronto, Ontario M5J 1H8

hevans@ctf.ca

For further information, please contact the director, as indicated above, or the co-chairs of the Canadian Tax Foundation Research Committee:

Mark Woltersdorf
c/o Canadian Tax Foundation / Fondation canadienne de fiscalité

Kim Brooks
c/o Canadian Tax Foundation / Fondation canadienne de fiscalité

Appel de propositions de livres

La Fondation canadienne de fiscalité (FCF) / Canadian Tax Foundation, un organisme sans but lucratif indépendant de recherche et à caractère éducatif, souhaite recevoir des propositions de livres dans les domaines de la fiscalité et des finances publiques.

Depuis sa fondation en 1945, la FCF a publié de nombreux livres et articles sur divers sujets dans ses champs d'intérêt. La FCF souhaite obtenir des propositions de projets de recherche qui :

- mèneront à la rédaction d'un livresur un sujet unique d'intérêt en fiscalité ou en finances publiques;
- seront dirigés par un chercheur chevronné ayant une expertise dans un domaine de la fiscalité ou des finances publiques;
- seront effectués dans un délai raisonnable, compte tenu de la nature du projet.

Les projets qui seront sélectionnés par la FCF pourront être partiellement ou totalement admissibles à une aide financière pour la recherche et les frais de publication. La FCF se réserve le droit absolu, et à sa seule discrétion, d'appuyer une proposition particulière ou de publier un projet.

Toute personne intéressée doit faire parvenir un bref sommaire de la proposition pour examen initial par la FCF à :

Heather Evans
Directrice exécutive et chef de la direction
Canadian Tax Foundation / Fondation canadienne de fiscalité
145 Wellington Street West, Suite 1400
Toronto, Ontario M5J 1H8

hevans@ctf.ca

Pour plus d'information, veuillez communiquer avec le directeur, tel qu'il est mentionné plus haut, ou avec les co-présidentes du comité de recherche de la Fondation canadienne de fiscalité :

Mark Woltersdorf
a/s Canadian Tax Foundation / Fondation canadienne de fiscalité

Kim Brooks
a/s Canadian Tax Foundation / Fondation canadienne de fiscalité

■ Recent and Upcoming Events*
■ Activités récentes et à venir*

PRAIRIE PROVINCES TAX CONFERENCE AND LIVE WEBCAST
Saskatoon and via Webcast, June 3-4, 2024

WOMEN IN TAX—WORK-LIFE BALANCE
Montreal, October 24, 2024

BRITISH COLUMBIA TAX CONFERENCE AND LIVE WEBCAST
Vancouver and via Webcast, September 16-17, 2024

ONTARIO TAX CONFERENCE AND LIVE WEBCAST
Toronto and via Webcast, October 21-22, 2024

ATLANTIC PROVINCES TAX CONFERENCE
Halifax, November 1-2, 2024

76TH ANNUAL TAX CONFERENCE
Vancouver, December 1-3, 2024

* For further details on upcoming events, please visit the Canadian Tax Foundation website at www.ctf.ca. / Pour plus de renseignements, veuillez consulter le site Web de la Fondation à www.fcf-ctf.ca.

CTF CANADIAN TAX FOUNDATION
FCF FONDATION CANADIENNE DE FISCALITÉ

© 2024, Canadian Tax Foundation/Fondation canadienne de fiscalité

Disclaimer. The material contained in this publication is not intended to be advice on any particular matter. No subscriber or other reader should act on the basis of any matter contained in this publication without considering appropriate professional advice. The publisher, and the authors and editors, expressly disclaim all and any liability to any person, whether a purchaser of this publication or not, in respect of anything and of the consequences of anything done or omitted to be done by any such person in reliance upon the contents of this publication. Opinions expressed by individual writers are not necessarily endorsed by the Canadian Tax Foundation and its members.

Photocopying and reprinting. Permission to photocopy or reprint any part of this publication for distribution must be applied for in writing; e-mail: permissions@ctf.ca.

Advertising. Inquiries relating to advertisements should be directed to Christine Escalante, e-mail: cescalante@ctf.ca.

Exonération de responsabilité. Le contenu de cette publication ne doit être interprété d'aucune façon comme un avis ou une opinion. L'abonné ou le lecteur ne devrait pas fonder ses décisions sur le contenu de cette publication sans envisager une consultation professionnelle appropriée. L'éditeur et les auteurs réfutent toute responsabilité envers toute personne, qu'elle soit abonnée ou non, relativement à toute conséquence résultant d'actes ou omissions faits en fonction du contenu de la présente publication. Les opinions exprimées par les auteurs particuliers ne sont pas nécessairement appuyées par la Fondation canadienne de fiscalité et ses membres.

Photocopie et réimpression. L'autorisation de photocopier ou de réimprimer toute portion de cette publication à des fins de distribution devra être obtenue en adressant une demande écrite à permissions @ctf.ca.

Annonces publicitaires. Toutes demandes concernant les annonces publicitaires devront être adressées à Christine Escalante, courriel : cescalante@ctf.ca.

Canadian Tax Journal
Published four times per year
Price: $75 per copy (plus applicable taxes)
Subscription rate: $430.00 per year (plus applicable taxes)
(HST registration no. R-106867260)

Canadian Tax Foundation
145 Wellington Street West
Suite 1400
Toronto, Canada M5J 1H8
Telephone: 416-599-0283
Toll Free: 1-877-733-0283
Facsimile: 416-599-9283
Internet: www.ctf.ca

2024, vol. 72, no. 3
(Issued November 2024)

ISSN 0008-5111

Printed in Canada
500 11-24

Revue fiscale canadienne
Publiée quatre fois l'an
Prix : 75 $ l'exemplaire (taxes en sus)
Abonnement : 430,00 $ par an (taxes en sus)
(Numéro d'enregistrement de TVH : R-106867260)

La Fondation canadienne de fiscalité
1250, boul. René-Lévesque ouest
Bureau 2935
Montréal (Québec) H3B 4W8
Téléphone : 514-939-6323
Télécopieur : 514-939-7353
Internet : www.fcf-ctf.ca

2024, vol. 72, n[o] 3
(publication : novembre 2024)

ISSN 0008-5111

Imprimée au Canada
500 11-24

■ 2024 VOLUME 72, Nº 3

Canadian Tax Journal
Revue fiscale canadienne

■ Canadian Tax Journal

INVITATION TO SUBMIT

The *Canadian Tax Journal* publishes research in, and informed comment on, taxation and public finance, with particular relevance to Canada. To this end, the journal invites interested parties to submit manuscripts for possible publication as peer-reviewed articles, and it especially welcomes work that contributes to the analysis, design, and implementation of tax policies.

Articles may be written in English or French and should present an original analysis of the topic. Submitted work, or any substantial part or version thereof, must not have been previously published, either in print or online, and it must not be submitted or scheduled for publication elsewhere. The journal welcomes shorter submissions (from 4,000 to 8,000 words) focused on specific topics as well as longer submissions that analyze issues in depth.

PEER REVIEW

Submitted articles are subject to a double-blind peer review; authors' identities are not known to reviewers, and reviewers' identities are not known to authors. (Non-peer-reviewed contributions may appear elsewhere in the journal.) Final decisions on the publication of articles are made by the editors—Kim Brooks, Kevin Milligan, and Daniel Sandler—on the advice of reviewers. Reviewers are experts in the area who are chosen by the editors to provide an opinion on the publishability of the submission and to make suggestions for improvement. Submissions may be (1) accepted outright; (2) accepted if recommended revisions are made; (3) revised by the authors, as requested by the editors on the advice of reviewers, and resubmitted for further review; or (4) rejected with reasons. The time from submission to the first editorial decision is usually two months or less.

SUBMISSION DETAILS

Prospective contributors should submit a copy of the manuscript to the journal's editorial department. The preferred method of submission is by e-mail with an attached Word document. E-mail inquiries are welcome: write to CTFeditorial@ctf.ca. Contributors are responsible for providing complete and accurate citations to sources, a detailed abstract (200 to 400 words), and up to six keywords for indexing purposes.

Manuscripts accepted for publication are to be prepared in the prescribed format. For details, see the Foundation's Style and Format Guide.

Because all articles are subject to double-blind review, a separate cover page should accompany each submission. The cover page should include the author's name, e-mail and postal addresses, telephone number, and fax number. Authors should take care not to identify themselves directly or indirectly in their articles.

POLICY FORUM CONTRIBUTIONS

The Policy Forum section includes both articles commissioned by the journal editors and articles proposed by prospective authors. All articles should aim for short and rigorous analysis (3,000 to 5,000 words) and be written for an audience of policy makers, tax practitioners, and students of fiscal and tax policy. Articles may be based on original research, or they may synthesize and apply established research findings to a particular policy context.

Calls for proposals for upcoming Policy Forum sections appear on the Foundation's website and Twitter feed and are circulated by e-mail. To receive these e-mails, please contact CTFeditorial@ctf.ca and ask to have your name added to the mailing list. Proposals will be reviewed by the journal editors, and authors whose proposals are selected will be invited to prepare articles.

All Policy Forum articles are reviewed by the journal's editors prior to publication.

ACCESSING THE JOURNAL

The full text of all articles that have appeared in the *Canadian Tax Journal* since its first issue in 1953 can be found in the Canadian Tax Foundation's TaxFind database and, with a minimum one-year delay, in HeinOnline, ProQuest, and EBSCO's Business Source Ultimate database. Also, peer-reviewed articles since 1991 are publicly available on the *Canadian Tax Journal*'s Issues Index web page.

The *Canadian Tax Journal* is also indexed in Scopus, LegalTrac, EconLit, Wolters Kluwer Canada's Canadian Income Tax Research Index, Carswell's Income Tax References, Canadian Periodicals Index, and Scott's Index to Canadian Legal Periodical Literature.

■ Revue fiscale canadienne

INVITATION À SOUMETTRE

La *Revue fiscale canadienne* publie des articles de recherches et des commentaires éclairés sur la fiscalité et les finances publiques, qui sont particulièrement pertinents pour le Canada. À cette fin, la Revue invite les personnes intéressées à soumettre des articles, qui seront évalués par des pairs, pour une éventuelle publication et elle accueille plus particulièrement les écrits qui contribuent à l'analyse, à la conception et à la mise en œuvre des politiques fiscales.

Les articles peuvent être rédigés en anglais ou en français et doivent présenter une analyse inédite du sujet. L'article soumis, ou toute partie ou version substantielle de celui-ci, ne doit pas avoir été publié antérieurement, que ce soit sous forme papier ou numérique, et il ne doit pas avoir été soumis ou prévu d'être publié ailleurs. La Revue accueille les soumissions plus courtes (de 4 000 à 8 000 mots) axées sur des sujets précis et également les soumissions plus longues qui analysent des problèmes en profondeur.

RÉVISION PAR LES PAIRS

Les articles soumis font l'objet d'une révision anonyme par les pairs; l'identité des auteurs n'est pas connue des réviseurs, et l'identité des réviseurs n'est pas connue des auteurs. (Les propositions non évaluées par des pairs peuvent être publiées ailleurs dans la Revue.) Les décisions concernant la publication des articles sont prises par les rédacteurs — Kim Brooks, Kevin Milligan et Daniel Sandler — à partir des conseils des réviseurs. Ces derniers sont des experts établis en la matière, ils sont choisis par les rédacteurs pour donner leur avis en ce qui concerne le bien-fondé de publier la soumission et formuler des suggestions d'amélioration. Les soumissions peuvent être 1) acceptées sans réserve; 2) acceptées sous réserve des changements recommandés; 3) révisées par les auteurs, en fonction des exigences des rédacteurs qui suivent les conseils des réviseurs, et soumises à nouveau pour une révision supplémentaire; ou 4) rejetées avec motifs. Le délai entre la soumission et la première décision de la rédaction est généralement de deux mois ou moins.

PRÉPARATION DE LA SOUMISSION

Les contributeurs potentiels doivent soumettre une copie de leur article à la rédaction de la Revue. La méthode de transmission privilégiée est le courriel avec un document Word en pièce jointe. Toutes demandes de renseignements par courriel sont les bienvenues : vous pouvez contacter le CTFeditorial@ctf.ca. Les contributeurs ont l'entière responsabilité de fournir les références complètes et précises des documents qu'ils citent, un résumé détaillé (200 à 400 mots) et jusqu'à six mots-clés qui seront utilisés à des fins d'indexation.

Les articles acceptés pour publication doivent être préparés selon le format prescrit. Pour en savoir plus, se rapporter au Guide de rédaction et de présentation de la Fondation.

Puisque tous les articles font l'objet d'une révision anonyme par deux personnes, une page couverture séparée doit accompagner chaque article. Sur la page couverture, inclure le nom de l'auteur, l'adresse courriel et l'adresse postale, le numéro de téléphone et le numéro de télécopieur. Les auteurs doivent s'assurer qu'il est impossible de les identifier de manière directe ou indirecte dans leur article.

CONTRIBUTIONS AU FORUM DE POLITIQUES

La section Forum de politiques comprend à la fois des articles commandés par les rédacteurs en chef de la Revue et des articles proposés par des auteurs potentiels. Tous les articles doivent présenter une analyse courte et rigoureuse (3 000 à 5 000 mots) et être rédigés pour un auditoire de décideurs, de fiscalistes et d'étudiants en politique fiscale. Les articles peuvent être fondés sur des recherches originales, ou ils peuvent synthétiser et appliquer les résultats de recherche établis dans un contexte politique particulier.

Les invitations à soumettre des propositions pour les prochaines sections du Forum de politiques sont publiées sur le site Web de la Fondation, sur le fil Twitter, et elles sont également envoyées par courriel. Pour recevoir ces courriels, veuillez communiquer avec CTFeditorial@ctf.ca et demander que votre nom soit ajouté à la liste de diffusion. Les propositions seront examinées par les rédacteurs en chef de la Revue, et les auteurs des propositions retenues seront invités à rédiger des articles.

Tous les articles du Forum de politiques sont révisés par les rédacteurs en chef de la Revue avant leur publication.

ACCÈS À LA REVUE

L'intégralité de tous les articles parus dans la *Revue fiscale canadienne* depuis son premier numéro en 1953 se trouve dans la base de données TaxFind de la Fondation canadienne de fiscalité et, après un délai minimal d'un an, dans HeinOnline, ProQuest et dans la base de données Business Source Ultimate d'EBSCO. De plus, les articles révisés par les pairs depuis 1991 sont accessibles au public sur la page Web de l'Index des numéros de la *Revue fiscale canadienne*.

La *Revue fiscale canadienne* est également indexée dans Scopus, LegalTrac, EconLit, dans la section de recherche en fiscalité canadienne de Wolters Kluwer Canada, dans la section de références de Carswell, dans le Canadian Periodicals Index et dans le Scott's Index to Canadian Legal Periodical Literature.

■ Canadian Tax Foundation

The Canadian Tax Foundation is Canada's leading source of insight on tax issues. The Foundation promotes understanding of the Canadian tax system through analysis, research, and debate, and provides perspective and impartial recommendations concerning its equity, efficiency, and application.

The Canadian Tax Foundation is an independent tax research organization and a registered charity with over 12,000 individual and corporate members in Canada and abroad. For more than 70 years, it has fostered a better understanding of the Canadian tax system and assisted in the development of that system through its research projects, conferences, publications, and representations to government.

Members find the Foundation to be a valuable resource both for the scope and depth of the tax information it provides and for its services, which support their everyday work in the taxation field.

Government policy makers and administrators have long respected the Foundation for its objectivity, its focus on current tax issues, its concern for improvement of the Canadian tax system, and its significant contribution to tax and fiscal policy.

MEMBERSHIP

Membership in the Foundation is open to all who are interested in its work. Membership fees are $446.00 a year, except that special member rates apply as follows: (a) $222.00 for members of the accounting and legal professions in the first three years following date of qualification to practise; (b) $222.00 for persons on full-time teaching staff of colleges, universities, or other educational institutions; (c) complimentary for students in full-time attendance at a recognized educational institution; and (d) $191.00 for persons who have reached the age of 65 and are no longer actively working in tax. Memberships are for a period of 12 months dating from the receipt of application with the appropriate payment.

Applications for membership are available from the membership administrator for the Canadian Tax Foundation: facsimile: 416-599-9283; Internet: www.ctf.ca; e-mail: ctfmembership@ctf.ca.

■ Fondation canadienne de fiscalité

La Fondation canadienne de fiscalité est un organisme indépendant de recherche sur la fiscalité inscrit sous le régime des œuvres de charité. Elle compte environ 12 000 membres au Canada et à l'étranger. Depuis plus de 70 ans, la FCF favorise une meilleure compréhension du système fiscal canadien et aide au développement de ce système par le biais de ses projets de recherche, conférences, publications et représentations auprès des gouvernements.

Les membres considèrent l'étendue et le détail de l'information offerte par la FCF comme une importante ressource. Ils apprécient également les autres services de la FCF qui facilitent leur travail quotidien dans le domaine de la fiscalité.

Les décideurs et administrateurs gouvernementaux respectent depuis longtemps l'objectivité de la FCF, son attention aux questions fiscales de l'heure, sa préoccupation envers l'amélioration du système fiscal canadien et son importante contribution au développement des politiques fiscales.

Adhésion

Toute personne intéressée aux travaux de la FCF peut en devenir membre. Les droits d'adhésion sont de 446,00 $ par année, à l'exception des tarifs spéciaux suivants : a) 222,00 $ pour les personnes faisant carrière en comptabilité ou en droit pendant les trois premières années suivant leur admission à la profession; b) 222,00 $ pour le personnel enseignant à temps plein dans un collège, une université ou une autre maison d'enseignement; c) gratuite pour les étudiants fréquentant à temps plein une maison d'enseignement reconnue; et d) 191,00 $ pour les personnes qui ont 65 ans et plus et qui ne travaillent plus activement en fiscalité. La période d'adhésion est de 12 mois, à compter de la réception de la demande accompagnée du paiement approprié.

Il est possible de se procurer les demandes d'adhésion auprès de l'administratice responsible de l'adhésion à la FCF : télécopieur : 514-939-7353; Internet : www.fcf-ctf.ca; courriel : adminmtl@ctf.ca.

BOARD OF GOVERNORS/CONSEIL DES GOUVERNEURS

As of November 28, 2023/Dès le 28 novembre 2023

Nathalie Amirault, NS[1]
Tara Benham, BC[1]
Cathie Brayley, BC[2]*
Ken J. Buttenham, ON[1]
Jeanne Cheng, ON[1]
Sarah Chiu, AB[2]
Alexander Demner, BC[2]
H. Michael Dolson, ON[2]
Mark Dumalski, ON[1]
Josianne Gagnon, QC[1]
Laurie Goldbach, AB[2]
Cathy Hawara, ON[3]
Kenneth Keung, AB[1]
Dean Landry, ON[1]*
Eric Levesque, QC[2]
Geoffrey Loomer, BC[3]
Paul Lynch, ON[1]*
Daryl Maduke, BC[1]
Lucinda Main, ON[2]
Terri McDowell, ON[1]*
Pooja Mihailovich, ON[2]
Anu Nijhawan, AB[2]*
Deen Olsen, ON[3]
Laura Peach, BC[2]
Leanne Rodrigo, ON[1]
Mike Smith, AB[1]*
John Sorenson, ON[2]
Paul Stepak, ON[2]
Dan Toy, QC[1]
Marie-Emmanuelle Vaillancourt, QC[2]
Mark Woltersdorf, AB[2]*
Jin Wen, ON[1]
Douglas Wright, NL[2]

* Executive Committee of the Board of Governors
Comité de direction du conseil des gouverneurs
[1] Nominee of the Chartered Professional Accountants of Canada
[2] Nominee of the Canadian Bar Association
[3] Non-sponsor

OFFICERS/MEMBRES DE LA DIRECTION

Chair/*Présidente du conseil*	Dean Landry
Vice-Chair and Chair of the Executive Committee/*Vice-président du conseil et président du comité de direction*	Anu Nijhawan
Second Vice-Chair/*Deuxième vice-présidente*	Mike Smith
Past Chair/*Présidente sortant du conseil*	Cathie Brayley
Executive Director and Chief Executive Officer/*Directrice exécutive et chef de la direction*	Heather Evans
Director, Membership Development and Community Relations/*Directeur, Développement du programme de l'adhésion et relations avec la communauté*	Wayne Adams
Chief Financial Officer/*Directrice financière*	Shelly Ali
Director, Quebec/*Directeur, Québec*	Carl Deslongchamps
Corporate Secretary/*Secrétaire générale*	Alexandra Cuk

STAFF/PERSONNEL

Director of Communications and Special Projects/*Directrice des communications et projets spéciaux*	Roda Ibrahim
Librarian/*Bibliothécaire*	Judy Singh
Managing Editor/*Directeur de la rédaction*	Michael Gaughan

■ Canadian Tax Foundation Publications

The Foundation's publications comprise a range of forms and delivery formats. A number of the regularly issued publications are distributed without charge to Foundation members: the *Canadian Tax Journal* (4 issues), *Perspectives on Tax Law & Policy* (4 issues, delivered electronically), *Tax for the Owner-Manager* (4 issues, delivered electronically), *Canadian Tax Focus* (4 issues, delivered electronically), *International Tax Highlights* (4 issues, delivered electronically), and the annual conference report. Monographs and books may be purchased on the Foundation's website at www.ctf.ca.

Canadian Tax Journal — issued quarterly to members via www.ctf.ca (Non-Members $75 per copy, $343.75 per year).

Newsletters

International Tax Highlights — issued quarterly to members via www.ctf.ca.

Perspectives on Tax Law & Policy — issued quarterly to members via www.ctf.ca.

Tax for the Owner-Manager — issued quarterly to members via www.ctf.ca.

Canadian Tax Focus — issued quarterly; available to members and non-members via www.ctf.ca.

Canadian Tax Highlights — archives (2000-2019) available to members via www.ctf.ca.

Conference Reports — Reports of the proceedings of annual tax conferences (Members $40; Non-Members $95). Latest issue: 2022 (Members $40; Non-Members $350).

- *Tax Dispute Resolution, Compliance, and Administration in Canada: Proceedings of the June 2012 Conference* (Members $30; Non-Members $195)
- Collections of papers delivered at regional and special tax conferences (British Columbia, Prairie Provinces, Ontario, and Atlantic Provinces) are available in USB format (Members $445; Non-Members $495).

Finances of the Nation — Review of expenditures and revenues and some budgets of the federal, provincial, and local governments of Canada. PDFs for the years 2002-2012 are available on the CTF website at no cost. In 2014, "Finances of the Nation" began to appear as a feature in issues of the *Canadian Tax Journal*.

Monographs

2024. *A History of Canadian Income Tax*, Volume 2, *The Income Tax Act, 1949-1971*, Colin Campbell and Robert Raizenne (Members $45; Non-Members $55)

2022. *Tax Disputes in Canada: The Path Forward*, Pooja Mihailovich and John Sorensen, eds. (Members $150; Non-Members $175)

2022. *A History of Canadian Income Tax*, Volume 1, *The Income War Tax Act, 1917-1948*, Colin Campbell and Robert Raizenne (Members $40; Non-Members $50)

2021. *The General Anti-Avoidance Rule: Past, Present, and Future*, Brian J. Arnold, ed. ($90 each)

2020. *Taxation of Private Corporations and Their Shareholders*, 5th edition, Rachel Gervais, John Sorensen, David Stevens, and Dave Walsh, eds. (Members and Non-Members $170; Students $70)

2019. *Funding the Canadian City*, Enid Slack, Lisa Philipps, Lindsay M. Tedds, and Heather L. Evans, eds. ($40 each)

2018. *Tax Treaties After the BEPS Project: A Tribute to Jacques Sasseville*, Brian J. Arnold, ed. (Members $60; Non-Members $90)

2018. *Reforming the Corporate Tax in a Changing World*, School of Public Policy of the University of Calgary (Members $30; Non-Members $50)

2017. *Income Tax at 100 Years: Essays and Reflections on the Income War Tax Act*, Jinyan Li, J. Scott Wilkie, and Larry F. Chapman, eds. (Members $60; Non-Members $90)

2016. *Reform of the Personal Income Tax in Canada*, School of Public Policy of the University of Calgary (Members $35; Non-Members $50)

2016. *Canadian Taxation of Trusts*, Elie S. Roth, Tim Youdan, Chris Anderson, and Kim Brown (Members $150; Non-Members $200; Students $50)

2016. *User Fees in Canada: A Municipal Design and Implementation Guide*, Catherine Althaus and Lindsay M. Tedds ($40 each)

2015. *Timing and Income Taxation*, 2d edition, Brian J. Arnold, Colin Campbell, Michael Hiltz, Richard Marcovitz, Shawn D. Porter, and James R. Wilson (Members $25; Non-Members $125; Students $25)

2015. *Effective Writing for Tax Professionals*, Kate Hawkins and Thomas E. McDonnell, QC (Members $35; Non-Members $40)

2014. *After Twenty Years: The Future of the Goods and Services Tax*, School of Public Policy of the University of Calgary (Members $25; Non-Members $35)

2013. *Essays on Tax Treaties: A Tribute to David A. Ward*, Guglielmo Maisto, Angelo Nikolakakis, and John M. Ulmer, eds. ($100 each)

2012. *Tax Policy in Canada*, Heather Kerr, Ken McKenzie, and Jack Mintz, eds. (Members $75; Non-Members $100; Students $50)

2011. *Canadian Tax Foundation Style Guide*, 5th edition (Members $35; Non-Members $40)

2011. *International Financial Reporting Standards: Their Adoption in Canada*, Jason Doucet, Andrée Lavigne, Caroline Nadeau, Jocelyn Patenaude, and Dave Santerre (Members $30; Non-Members $40)

2011. *Tax Expenditures: State of the Art — Selected Proceedings of the Osgoode 2009 Conference*, Lisa Philipps, Neil Brooks, and Jinyan Li, eds. (Members $45; Non-Members $55; Students $30)

2010. *Taxation of Private Corporations and Their Shareholders*, 4th edition (Members $75; Non-Members $100; Students $25)

Tax Professional Series (Please specify title and author when ordering.)

2003. *The Taxation of Business Profits Under Tax Treaties*, Brian J. Arnold, Jacques Sasseville, and Eric M. Zolt, eds. (softcover edition, $75)

2003. *International Taxation in the Age of Electronic Commerce: A Comparative Study*, Jinyan Li. Co-published with International Fiscal Association (Canadian Branch) (Members $95; Non-Members $145; Students $45)

1999. *Countering Tax Treaty Abuses: A Canadian Perspective on an International Issue*, Nathalie Goyette ($75 each)

Canadian Tax Paper Series (Please specify publication number when ordering.)

No. 112: 2009. *Effective Responses to Aggressive Tax Planning: What Canada Can Learn from Other Jurisdictions*, Gilles N. Larin and Robert Duong, with a contribution from Marie Jacques

No. 111: 2009. *Reforming Canada's International Tax System: Toward Coherence and Simplicity*, Brian J. Arnold (Members $100; Non-Members $125)

No. 110: 2006. *Financing Education and Training in Canada*, 2d edition, Douglas Auld and Harry Kitchen

No. 109: 2004. *The Canadian Federal-Provincial Equalization Regime: An Assessment*, Alex S. MacNevin

No. 108: 2004. *Venture Capital and Tax Incentives: A Comparative Study of Canada and the United States*, Daniel Sandler

No. 107: 2002. *Municipal Revenue and Expenditure Issues in Canada*, Harry M. Kitchen (Members $20; Non-Members $40)

No. 106: 2002. *Taxes and the Canadian Underground Economy*, David E.A. Giles and Lindsay M. Tedds

No. 105: 2000. *The Income Tax Treatment of Financial Instruments: Theory and Practice*, Tim Edgar

No. 104: 1999. *Rationality in Public Policy: Retrospect and Prospect, A Tribute to Douglas G. Hartle*, Richard M. Bird, Michael J. Trebilcock, and Thomas A. Wilson, eds.

No. 103: 1999. *Canadian Tax Policy*, 3d edition, Robin W. Boadway and Harry M. Kitchen

No. 102: 1997. *Financing the Canadian Federation, 1867 to 1995: Setting the Stage*, David B. Perry

No. 101: 1997. *General Payroll Taxes: Economics, Politics, and Design*, Jonathan R. Kesselman

No. 100: 1995. *Growth of Government Spending in Alberta*, Paul Boothe

No. 99: 1995. *Financing Education and Training in Canada*, Harry Kitchen and Douglas Auld

Special Studies in Taxation and Public Finance (Please specify publication number when ordering.)

No. 2: 2000. *Gambling and Governments in Canada, 1969-1998: How Much? Who Plays? What Payoff?* François Vaillancourt and Alexandre Roy

No. 1: 1998. *Federal-Provincial Tax Sharing and Centralized Tax Collection in Canada*, Ernest H. Smith

■ Les publications de la Fondation canadienne de fiscalité

Les publications de la Fondation existent sous différentes formes et elles sont disponibles de diverses façons. Certaines de ces publications régulières sont distribuées gratuitement aux membres de la Fondation : la *Revue fiscale canadienne* (4 numéros), *Perspectives en fiscalité et en politique fiscale* (4 numéros, offerts électroniquement), *Actualités fiscales pour les propriétaires exploitants* (4 numéros, offerts électroniquement), *Canadian Tax Focus* (4 numéros, offerts électroniquement), *International Tax Highlights* (4 numéros, offerts électroniquement) et le Rapport de la conférence annuelle. Les livres et monographies peuvent être achetés sur le site Web de la Fondation www.fcf-ctf.ca.

Revue Fiscale Canadienne — parution trimestrielle aux membres sur www.fcf-ctf.ca (Non-membres 75 $ par numéro, 343,75 $ par année).

Bulletins

International Tax Highlights — parution trimestrielle disponible aux membres sur www.fcf-ctf.ca.

Perspectives en fiscalité et en politique fiscal — parution trimestrielle disponible aux membres sur www.fcf-ctf.ca.

Actualités fiscales pour les propriétaires exploitants — parution trimestrielle disponible aux membres sur www.fcf-ctf.ca.

Canadian Tax Focus — parution trimestrielle disponible aux membres et non-membres sur www.fcf-ctf.ca.

Faits saillants en fiscalité canadienne — archives (2000-2019) accessibles aux membres sur www.fcf-ctf.ca.

Rapports des Conférences — comptes rendus des conférences annuelles sur la fiscalité (Membres 40 $; Non-membres 95 $). Dernière édition : 2022 (Membres 40 $; Non-membres 350 $).

- *Tax Dispute Resolution, Compliance, and Administration in Canada: Proceedings of the June 2012 Conference* (Membres 30 $; Non-membres 195 $)
- Collections contenant les travaux présentés aux conférences régionales sur la fiscalité, soit British Columbia, Prairie Provinces, Ontario et Atlantic Provinces, sont disponibles en format USB (Membres 445 $; Non-membres 495 $).

Finances of the Nation — Analyse des recettes et dépenses, et quelques budgets, des gouvernements fédéral, provinciaux et locaux au Canada. Les copies PDF pour les années 2002-2012 sont disponibles sur le site Web de la FCF pour téléchargement gratuit. Dans le numéro 62:3 (2014), « Finances of the Nation » est apparu dans les éditions de la *Revue fiscale canadienne* à titre de nouvelle rubrique.

Monographies

2024. *A History of Canadian Income Tax*, Volume 2, *The Income Tax Act, 1949-1971*, Colin Campbell et Robert Raizenne (Membres 45 $; Non-membres 55 $)

2022. *Tax Disputes in Canada: The Path Forward*, Pooja Mihailovich et John Sorensen, eds. (Membres 150 $; Non-membres 175 $)

2022. *A History of Canadian Income Tax*, Volume 1, *The Income War Tax Act, 1917-1948*, Colin Campbell et Robert Raizenne (Membres 40 $; Non-membres 50 $)

2021. *The General Anti-Avoidance Rule: Past, Present, and Future*, Brian J. Arnold, éd. ($90 chacun)

2020. *Taxation of Private Corporations and Their Shareholders*, 5ième édition, Rachel Gervais, John Sorensen, David Stevens et Dave Walsh, éds. (Membres et Non-membres 170 $; Étudiants 70 $)

2019. *Funding the Canadian City*, Enid Slack, Lisa Philipps, Lindsay M. Tedds et Heather L. Evans, éds. ($40 chacun)

2018. *Tax Treaties After the BEPS Project: A Tribute to Jacques Sasseville*, Brian J. Arnold, éd. (Membres 60 $; Non-membres 90 $)

2018. *Reforming the Corporate Tax in a Changing World*, l'École de politique publique de l'Université de Calgary (Membres 30 $; Non-membres 50 $)

2017. *Income Tax at 100 Years: Essays and Reflections on the Income War Tax Act*, Jinyan Li, J. Scott Wilkie et Larry F. Chapman, éds. (Membres 60 $; Non-membres 90 $)

2016. *Reform of the Personal Income Tax in Canada*, l'École de politique publique de l'Université de Calgary (Membres 35 $; Non-membres 50 $)

2016. *Canadian Taxation of Trusts*, Elie S. Roth, Tim Youdan, Chris Anderson et Kim Brown (Membres 150 $; Non-membres 200 $; Étudiants 50 $)

2016. *User Fees in Canada: A Municipal Design and Implementation Guide*, Catherine Althaus et Lindsay M. Tedds (40 $ chacun)

2015. *Timing and Income Taxation*, 2ième édition, Brian J. Arnold, Colin Campbell, Michael Hiltz, Richard Marcovitz, Shawn D. Porter et James R. Wilson (Membres 25 $; Non-membres 125 $; Étudiants 25 $)

2015. *Effective Writing for Tax Professionals*, Kate Hawkins et Thomas E. McDonnell, QC (Membres 35 $; Non-membres 40 $)

2014. *After Twenty Years: The Future of the Goods and Services Tax*, l'École de politique publique de l'Université de Calgary (Membres 25 $; Non-membres 35 $)

2013. *Essays on Tax Treaties: A Tribute to David A. Ward*, Guglielmo Maisto, Angelo Nikolakakis et John M. Ulmer, éds. (100 $ chacun)

2012. *Tax Policy in Canada*, Heather Kerr, Ken McKenzie et Jack Mintz, éds. (Membres 75 $; Non-membres 100 $; Étudiants 50 $)

2011. *Canadian Tax Foundation Style Guide*, 5ième édition (Membres 35 $; Non-membres 40 $)

2011. *International Financial Reporting Standards: Their Adoption in Canada*, Jason Doucet, Andrée Lavigne, Caroline Nadeau, Jocelyn Patenaude et Dave Santerre (Membres 30 $; Non-membres 40 $)

2011. *Tax Expenditures: State of the Art — Selected Proceedings of the Osgoode 2009 Conference*, Lisa Philipps, Neil Brooks et Jinyan Li, éds. (Membres 45 $; Non-membres 55 $; Étudiants 30 $)

2010. *Taxation of Private Corporations and Their Shareholders*, 4ième édition (Membres 75 $; Non-membres 100 $; Étudiants 25 $)

Collection Tax Professional (Prière d'indiquer le titre et le nom de l'auteur sur votre commande.)

2003. *The Taxation of Business Profits Under Tax Treaties*, Brian J. Arnold, Jacques Sasseville et Eric M. Zolt, éds. (édition brochée, 75 $)

2003. *International Taxation in the Age of Electronic Commerce: A Comparative Study*, Jinyan Li. Publié en collaboration avec l'Association fiscale internationale (chapitre canadien). (Membres 95 $; Non-membres 145 $; Étudiants 45 $)

1999. *Contrer l'abus des conventions fiscales : Point de vue canadien sur une question internationale*, Nathalie Goyette (75 $ chacun)

Canadian Tax Paper Series (Prière d'indiquer le numéro de la publication.)

No 112 : 2009. *Des résponses efficaces aux planifications fiscales agressives : leçons à retenir des autres juridictions*, Gilles N. Larin et Robert Duong, avec la contribution de Marie Jacques

No 111 : 2009. *Reforming Canada's International Tax System: Toward Coherence and Simplicity*, Brian J. Arnold (Membres 100 $; Non-membres 125 $)

No 110 : 2006. *Financing Education and Training in Canada*, 2ième édition, Douglas Auld et Harry Kitchen

No 109 : 2004. *The Canadian Federal-Provincial Equalization Regime: An Assessment*, Alex S. MacNevin

No 108 : 2004. *Venture Capital and Tax Incentives: A Comparative Study of Canada and the United States*, Daniel Sandler

N° 107 : 2002. *Municipal Revenue and Expenditure Issues in Canada*, Harry M. Kitchen (Membres 20 $; Non-membres 40 $)

N° 106 : 2002. *Taxes and the Canadian Underground Economy*, David E.A. Giles et Lindsay M. Tedds

N° 105 : 2000. *The Income Tax Treatment of Financial Instruments: Theory and Practice*, Tim Edgar

N° 104 : 1999. *Rationality in Public Policy: Retrospect and Prospect, A Tribute to Douglas G. Hartle*, Richard M. Bird, Michael J. Trebilcock et Thomas A. Wilson, éds.

N° 103 : 1999. *Canadian Tax Policy*, 3ième édition, Robin W. Boadway et Harry M. Kitchen

N° 101 : 1997. *General Payroll Taxes: Economics, Politics, and Design*, Jonathan R. Kesselman)

N° 102 : 1997. *Financing the Canadian Federation, 1867 to 1995: Setting the Stage*, David B. Perry

N° 100 : 1995. *Growth of Government Spending in Alberta*, Paul Boothe

N° 99 : 1995. *Financing Education and Training in Canada*, Harry Kitchen et Douglas Auld

SPECIAL STUDIES IN TAXATION AND PUBLIC FINANCE SERIES (Prière d'indiquer le numéro de la publication.)

N° 2 : 2000. *Gambling and Governments in Canada, 1969-1998: How Much? Who Plays? What Payoff?* François Vaillancourt et Alexandre Roy

N° 1 : 1998. *Federal-Provincial Tax Sharing and Centralized Tax Collection in Canada*, Ernest H. Smith

canadian tax journal / revue fiscale canadienne (2024) 72:3, 577-94
https://doi.org/10.32721/ctj.2024.72.3.gamino

How Do Fitness Tax Credits Affect Children's Physical Activity Levels? Evidence from Canada

Aaron M. Gamino*

PRÉCIS

Dans cet article, l'auteur analyse les données sur les crédits d'impôt pour la condition physique des enfants et les taux d'imposition dans les provinces canadiennes afin d'évaluer si les réductions de l'obligation fiscale des contribuables qui demandent ces crédits ont un effet positif sur les niveaux d'activité physique des enfants. En s'appuyant sur les données d'enquêtes canadiennes menées entre 2001 et 2014, l'auteur ne trouve aucune preuve que les crédits d'impôt pour la condition physique stimulent une augmentation globale des niveaux d'activité physique ou améliorent l'état de santé autodéclaré. Toutefois, il a trouvé des preuves que les crédits d'impôt pour la condition physique des enfants augmentent l'activité des enfants des ménages qui se situent dans les 40 pour cent ayant les revenus les plus élevés. Malgré le coût substantiel que représente pour le gouvernement le manque à gagner en recettes fiscales, les crédits d'impôt pour la condition physique des enfants ne semblent pas réussir à améliorer les niveaux moyens d'activité physique des enfants.

ABSTRACT

In this article, the author analyzes data on children's fitness tax credits and tax rates across Canadian provinces to assess whether tax liability reductions for taxpayers claiming these credits have a positive impact on children's physical activity levels. Using Canadian survey data from 2001 to 2014, the author finds no evidence that fitness tax credits spur an aggregate increase in physical activity levels or improve self-reported health. However, he finds some evidence that children's fitness tax credits increase activity among children in the top 40 percent of households based on income. Despite the substantial costs in forgone government tax revenue, children's fitness tax credits appear to be ineffective in improving children's average physical activity levels.

KEYWORDS: CANADA ■ CHILDREN ■ HEALTH ■ TAX CREDITS

* Of the Department of Economics and Finance, Middle Tennessee State University, Murfreesboro, Tennessee (e-mail: aaron.gamino@mtsu.edu).

CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION

In 2017, 30 percent of children in Canada aged 5 to 17 years were overweight or obese.[1] Childhood obesity is associated with an increased prevalence of various physical maladies, reduced mental health, and obesity in adulthood.[2] Given the high share of children who are overweight or obese, and the associated costs, identifying ways to encourage children to achieve and maintain a healthy weight has become an essential topic of research.

One strategy that has been explored is to increase the number of children who meet recommended levels of physical activity and thereby improve the body mass index (BMI) of children who are overweight or obese.[3] Between 2007 and 2015, an average of only 33 percent of Canadian children aged 6 to 17 met the recommended 60 minutes of moderate to vigorous physical activity per day.[4] In response to growing concern about children's fitness and health, several provincial and territorial governments and the federal government have adopted tax credits for qualifying registration or enrolment costs incurred for children's participation in physical activities.

---

1 Public Health Agency of Canada, "Tackling Obesity in Canada: Childhood Obesity and Excess Weight Rates in Canada" (www.canada.ca/en/public-health/services/publications/healthy-living/obesity-excess-weight-rates-canadian-children.html), data reported for 2017.

2 Stephen R. Daniels, Marc S. Jacobson, Brian W. McCrindle, Robert H. Eckel, and Brigid McHugh Sanner, "American Heart Association Childhood Obesity Research Summit: Executive Summary" (2009) 119:15 *Circulation* 2114-23 (https://doi.org/10.1161/CIRCULATIONAHA.109.192215).

3 Peter T. Katzmarzyk, Jean-Philippe Chaput, Mikael Fogelholm, Gang Hu, Carol Maher, Jose Maia, Timothy Olds, Olga L. Sarmiento, Martyn Standage, Mark S. Tremblay, and Catrine Tudor-Locke, "International Study of Childhood Obesity, Lifestyle and the Environment (ISCOLE): Contributions to Understanding the Global Obesity Epidemic" (2019) 11:4 *Nutrients* 848-72 (https://doi.org/10.3390/nu11040848).

4 Rachel C. Colley, Valerie Carson, Didier Garriguet, Ian Janssen, Karen C. Roberts, and Mark S. Tremblay, "Physical Activity of Canadian Children and Youth, 2007 to 2015" (2017) 28:10 *Health Reports* 8-16.

The first tax credit that aimed to encourage activity among Canadian youth was adopted in 2005 by Nova Scotia. The province's healthy living tax credit allowed a tax credit for up to $500[5] of expenses incurred in enrolling a child in an eligible physical activity. The value of the tax credit does not translate to household savings at a one-to-one ratio. Instead, the tax credit reduces a claimant's tax liability on the basis of the rate for the lowest personal tax bracket, resulting in a maximum tax liability reduction of $44.00 for a Nova Scotian household. Since 2005, nearly half of the provinces or territories have followed suit and adopted similar forms of income support for children's physical activities. In 2007, the federal government introduced the children's fitness tax credit (CFTC). The combined federal and provincial/territorial tax credits could amount to as much as $2,000 in the most generous jurisdiction.

In this article, I provide the first causal estimates of the impact of tax credits on children's participation in leisure physical activities. I determine the amount of tax liability reduction available each year in each province or territory, using data on fitness tax credits and tax rates at the provincial, territorial, and federal levels. By combining the listed value of the available tax credits and data from the Canadian Community Health Survey (CCHS) covering the period 2001-2014, I assess the relationship between fitness tax credits and children's physical activity levels. I find no evidence that a reduction in tax liability has a positive impact on the overall likelihood that a child will participate in leisure physical activities or improves self-reported health status. However, I find evidence of an increase in the frequency of leisure physical activities among children in higher-income households.

This article contributes to the literature exploring the relationship between offered incentives and exercise outcomes. Prior research has examined the effects of providing incentives (either monetary or non-monetary) on college students,[6] workers,[7] gym members,[8] overweight or obese adults,[9] and older adults.[10] Studies examining

---

5 All dollar amounts referred to in this article are in Canadian dollars.

6 Bhagyashree Katare, "Do Low-Cost Economic Incentives Motivate Healthy Behavior?" (May 2021) 41 *Economics & Human Biology* (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ehb.2021.100982); Lizzy Pope and Jean Harvey-Berino, "Burn and Earn: A Randomized Controlled Trial Incentivizing Exercise During Fall Semester for College First-Year Students" (2013) 56:3-4 *Preventive Medicine* 197-201; and Timothy K.M. Beatty and Bhagyashree Katare, "Low-Cost Approaches to Increasing Gym Attendance" (September 2018) 61 *Journal of Health Economics* 63-76 (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jhealeco.2018.05.006).

7 Heather Royer, Mark Stehr, and Justin Sydnor, "Incentives, Commitments, and Habit Formation in Exercise: Evidence from a Field Experiment with Workers at a Fortune-500 Company" (2015) 7:3 *American Economic Journal: Applied Economics* 51-84.

8 Gary Charness and Uri Gneezy, "Incentives To Exercise" (2009) 77:3 *Econometrica* 909-31; Kirsten I.M. Rohde and Willem Verbeke, "We Like To See You in the Gym—A Field Experiment on Financial Incentives for Short and Long Term Gym Attendance" (February 2017) 134 *Journal of Economic Behavior & Organization* 388-407 (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jebo.2016.12.012); Mariana Carrera, Heather Royer, Mark Stehr, and Justin Sydnor, "Can

(Notes 8, 9, and 10 are continued on the next page.)

the impact on children have found that lottery prizes increase walking or biking to school among school-aged children,[11] monetary incentives increase exercise among American Indian adolescents,[12] and activity vouchers increase exercise among year nine students in the United Kingdom.[13]

So far, the literature has consisted primarily of experimental interventions providing incentives through lotteries or rewards. The findings from these studies may not be generalizable to the public, given that participants are aware of their participation in a study, and the experimental settings do not accurately approximate conditions encountered in an extensive national or subnational (provincial or territorial) policy. As a result, there is a need to analyze the data relating to these governmental interventions. The adoption of fitness credits in Canada at the national and subnational levels provides an opportunity to assess the impact of such tax credits on exercise in a quasi-experimental setting. The literature lacks an analysis of whether large-scale tax credits are a viable means of increasing exercise among youth. This study aims to fill these gaps in the literature by examining youth fitness tax credits implemented both subnationally and nationally in Canada.

Financial Incentives Help People Trying To Establish New Habits? Experimental Evidence with New Gym Members" (March 2015) 58 *Journal of Health Economics* 202-14; and Dan Acland and Matthew R. Levy, "Naiveté, Projection Bias, and Habit Formation in Gym Attendance" (2015) 61:1 *Management Science* 146-60.

9 Mitesh S. Patel, David A. Asch, Roy Rosin, Dylan S. Small, Scarlett L. Bellamy, Jack Heuer, Susan Sproat, Chris Hyson, Nancy Haff, Samantha M. Lee, Lisa Wesby, Karen Hoffer, David Shuttleworth, Devon H. Taylor, Victoria Hilbert, Jingsan Zhu, Lin Yang, Xingmei Wang, and Kevin G. Volpp, "Framing Financial Incentives To Increase Physical Activity Among Overweight and Obese Adults: A Randomized, Controlled Trial" (2016) 164:6 *Annals of Internal Medicine* 385-94.

10 Eric A. Finkelstein, Derek S. Brown, David R. Brown, and David M. Buchner, "A Randomized Study of Financial Incentives To Increase Physical Activity Among Sedentary Older Adults" (2008) 47:2 *Preventive Medicine* 182-87.

11 Harold E. Cuffe, William T. Harbaugh, Jason M. Lindo, Giancarlo Musto, and Glen R. Waddell, "Evidence on the Efficacy of School-Based Incentives for Healthy Living" (2012) 31:6 *Economics of Education Review* 1028-36 (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.econedurev.2012.07.001).

12 Lilian Golzarri-Arroyo, Xiwei Chen, Stephanie L. Dickinson, Kevin R. Short, David M. Thompson, and David B. Allison, "Corrected Analysis of 'Using Financial Incentives To Promote Physical Activity in American Indian Adolescents: A Randomized Controlled Trial' Confirms Conclusions" (2020) 15:6 *PLoS ONE* (https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0233273); and Kevin R. Short, Jennifer Q. Chadwick, Tamela K. Cannady, Dannielle E. Branam, David F. Wharton, Mary A. Tullier, David M. Thompson, and Kenneth C. Copeland, "Using Financial Incentives To Promote Physical Activity in American Indian Adolescents: A Randomized Controlled Trial" (2018) 13:6 *PLoS ONE* (https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0198390).

13 Danielle Christian, Charlotte Todd, Rebecca Hill, Jaynie Rance, Kelly Mackintosh, Gareth Stratton, and Sinead Brophy, "Active Children Through Incentive Vouchers—Evaluation (ACTIVE): A Mixed-Method Feasibility Study" (2016) 16:1 *BMC Public Health* 890-99 (https://doi.org/10.1186/s12889-016-3381-6).

In the sections of this article that follow, first, I provide background information on children's fitness tax credits in Canada; second, I discuss the data used in the study; third, I describe my methodology; fourth, I present the results of the analysis; and finally, I discuss the policy implications of the results. Two appendixes provide additional details about the tax credits (in appendix A at the end of this article) and about the statistical analysis and results (in appendix B, available online).

FITNESS TAX CREDITS

Seven of Canada's 13 provinces and territories implemented a fitness tax credit during the study period (2001-2014). As noted above, Nova Scotia adopted a fitness tax credit in 2005, followed by Manitoba and Yukon in 2007, Saskatchewan in 2009, Ontario in 2010, British Columbia in 2012, and Quebec in 2013. British Columbia, Manitoba, Quebec, Saskatchewan, and Yukon expanded the generosity of their tax credit program during the study period. Federally, the CFTC, adopted in 2007, was expanded in 2014. The costs to the government of providing the tax credits grew rapidly from $1 million in 2005 to $286 million in 2013.[14] Ultimately, most of these programs ended shortly after 2015.

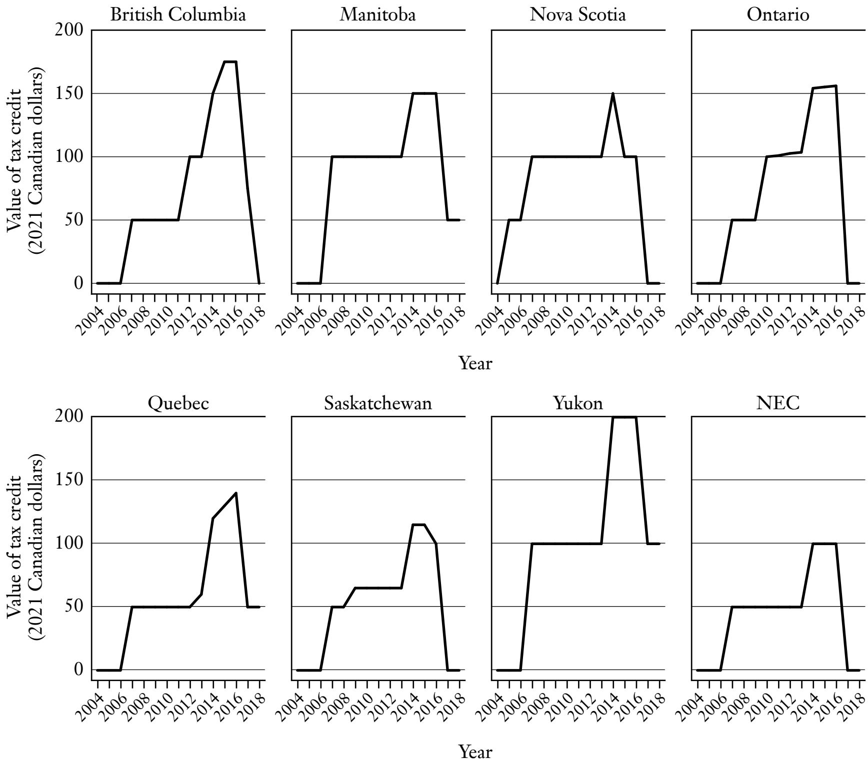
Eligibility for the tax credit varied across jurisdictions. The maximum age for an eligible child varied from 14 to 18 years, with the most common age threshold being 16. In addition to having different age requirements, the size of the tax credits varied by program. Differences in personal income tax rates among jurisdictions also affected the amount of the tax liability reduction that households received from a fitness tax credit. Regardless of household income, the value of the tax liability reduction is based on the lowest provincial, territorial, or federal tax rate multiplied by the amount claimed. Appendix A provides details on the value of the tax credit, the age requirements, and the applicable personal income tax rates at the federal, provincial, and territorial levels.

To illustrate the role of income tax rates, consider the $500 tax credit offered in 2012 by British Columbia and Manitoba. The applicable tax rate in British Columbia was 5.06 percent, resulting in a maximum tax liability reduction of $25.30. Manitoba's applicable tax rate was 10.8 percent, resulting in a maximum tax liability reduction of $54.00. Although the value of the credit was the same in both provinces, the differences in provincial income tax rates resulted in Manitoba's credit having more than double the impact on tax liability compared to British Columbia's credit. For this reason, the analysis in this study focuses on the maximum reduction in tax liability available under each fitness tax credit program, rather than the listed value of a credit, which ignores differences in tax rates. In figure 1, I show the reduction in tax liability in 2021 Canadian dollars by province or territory from 2004 to 2018. Clearly, the differences in tax credits and relevant tax systems result in considerable variation across jurisdictions.

---

14 JoAnne Sauder, "Children's Fitness and Activity Tax Credits: Why They Were Created and What They Are Intended To Do" (2014) 21 *Health Law Journal* 75-96.

FIGURE 1 Reduction in Tax Liability by Province or Territory and Year, 2004-2018



NEC = not elsewhere classified.

Notes: Tax liability reduction is calculated as the maximum value of the fitness tax credit in the particular jurisdiction multiplied by the lowest applicable personal income tax rate. The plotted line represents the combination of federal and, where implemented, provincial or territorial tax credits. NEC includes the provinces and territories that did not adopt a tax credit in this period —namely, Alberta, New Brunswick, Newfoundland and Labrador, the Northwest Territories, Nunavut, and Prince Edward Island—and reflects only the federal children's fitness tax credit.

Despite the policy goal of promoting physical fitness and reducing obesity among children,[15] no prior research has thoroughly explored whether the tax credits actually contribute to the achievement of these objectives. The research that has examined exercise is limited to a single study that focused on a sample of Alberta students aged 10 to 11 years in 2012 and 2014,[16] and included no untreated years or ineligible ages.

15 Ibid.

16 Jodie A. Stearns, Paul J. Veugelers, Tara-Leigh McHugh, Chris Sprysak, and John C. Spence, "The Use of a Nonrefundable Tax Credit To Increase Children's Participation in Physical Activity in Alberta, Canada" (2021) 18:9 *Journal of Physical Activity and Health* 1067-73.

The authors found no association between federal tax credit claim status and physical activity or pedometer steps. Spence[17] surveyed a representative sample of Canadians and found that almost 16 percent of parents who claimed the CFTC believed that it increased their child's participation in physical activity programs.

Most of the work on the CFTC has focused on the characteristics of households that claim the credit. Higher-income households are more aware of and more likely to claim the CFTC than are lower-income households.[18] Higher tax literacy among higher-income Canadians may partially explain why higher-income households are more likely to claim the CFTC.[19] Households in an urban area or with at least one male child also are more likely to claim the CFTC.[20]

DATA

I use the CCHS to explore the impact of fitness tax credits on exercise. The CCHS interviews Canadians who are 12 years of age and older living across Canada. Individuals are excluded from the survey if they live on reserves or in Indigenous settlements, are institutionalized, are children in foster care, or live in Région du Nunavik or Région des Terres-Cries-de-la-Baie-James. With these restrictions, the CCHS covers approximately 97 percent of the age-eligible Canadian population. Interviews are conducted in English and French and cover Canada's provinces and territories. The survey is released in cycles every two years, providing a sample of approximately 65,000 individuals in each survey year.

In 2015, the CCHS underwent a significant redesign that included changes in survey questions and sampling methodology. To avoid issues that arise from the redesign, I use CCHS data from 2001 to 2014 for my analysis. The CCHS reports the geographical information for respondents, allowing me to match the respondent to the province- or territory-level tax credit policy. The CCHS contains basic demographic information on race, gender, the highest level of education in the household, and household income.

Importantly for this analysis, the CCHS contains information on participation in leisure physical activities. The list of activities expands in later cycles, notably adding

17 John C. Spence, Nicholas L. Holt, Julia K. Dutove, and Valerie Carson, "Uptake and Effectiveness of the Children's Fitness Tax Credit in Canada: The Rich Get Richer" (2010) 10:1 *BMC Public Health* 356-61.

18 Barbara von Tigerstrom, Tamara Larre, and JoAnne Sauder, "Using the Tax System To Promote Physical Activity: Critical Analysis of Canadian Initiatives" (2011) 101:8 *American Journal of Public Health* e10-e16; and Koren L. Fisher, Amin Mawani, Barbara von Tigerstrom, Tamara Larre, Christine Cameron, Karen E. Chad, Bruce Reeder, and Mark S. Tremblay, "Awareness and Use of Canada's Children's Fitness Tax Credit" (2013) 61:3 *Canadian Tax Journal* 599-632. See also Stearns et al., supra note 16, and Spence et al., supra note 17.

19 Antoine Genest-Grégoire, Luc Godbout, and Jean-Herman Guay, *The Knowledge Deficit About Taxes: Who It Affects and What To Do About It*, C.D. Howe Institute Commentary no. 484 (Toronto: C.D. Howe Institute, 2017).

20 Fisher et al., supra note 18.

questions pertaining to soccer. For consistency, I use the 21 leisure activities included in the 2001-2002 cycle. Activities added subsequently are included in the "other activities" category. Respondents report the number of times that they participated in the activity in the last three months and the average duration of each episode. Table B1 in appendix B[21] lists each of the 21 activities and reports the descriptive statistics for self-reported participation in each activity. Self-reported activity has been found to be in agreement, on average, with accelerometer-measured activity among 12- to 17-year-old Canadians between 2007 and 2011[22] and with accelerometer-measured or parent-reported activity levels among 10- to 12-year-old Australians.[23]

The CCHS uses responses to the activity questions to construct additional derived variables. A measure of the average monthly frequency of physical activity lasting more than 15 minutes is constructed by aggregating the reported participation habits of each respondent and dividing by 3 to obtain a monthly average. This average is then used to group the frequency of physical activity into three groups: infrequent (a monthly average less than 4), occasional (a monthly average greater than or equal to 4 but less than 12), and regular (a monthly average greater than or equal to 12). I create indicators for each of these three frequency measures. I create two additional indicators, "none" and "daily," which capture the subset of infrequent exercisers with a monthly average of 0 and the subset of regular exercisers with a monthly average greater than or equal to 30, respectively.

Additionally, the CCHS calculates respondents' energy expenditure using a measurement tool known as the metabolic equivalent of task (MET). METs are measured as a multiple of the metabolic energy expenditure relative to the resting metabolic rate. The CCHS calculates average daily energy expenditure with the following formula:

$$EE = (N \times D \times MET\ value)/365,$$

where EE is daily energy expenditure (in METs), N is the number of times that a respondent participated in the activity over a 12-month period, D is the average duration of the activity (in hours), and $MET\ value$ is the energy cost of the activity (in kilocalories per kilogram per hour [kcal/kg/hr]). The $MET\ value$ for each activity is listed in appendix table B2. For example, the $MET\ value$ of participating in baseball or softball is 3 kcal/kg/hr. This means that an individual playing baseball uses triple the energy spent when at rest (0). The CCHS classifies respondents' level of energy

21 Appendix B is available from my personal website at www.aaronmgamino.com/wp-content/uploads/2024/07/CTJ-Appendix-B-1.pdf.

22 Didier Garriguet and Rachel C. Colley, "A Comparison of Self-Reported Leisure-Time Physical Activity and Measured Moderate-to-Vigorous Physical Activity in Adolescents and Adults" (2014) 25:7 *Health Reports* 3-11.

23 Amanda Telford, Jo Salmon, Damien Jolley, and David Crawford, "Reliability and Validity of Physical Activity Questionnaires for Children: The Children's Leisure Activities Study Survey (CLASS)" (2004) 16:1 *Pediatric Exercise Science* 64-78 (https://doi.org/10.1123/pes.16.1.64).

expenditure as "active" (*EE* greater than or equal to 3), "moderate" (*EE* greater than or equal to 1.5 and less than 3), or "inactive" (*EE* less than 1.5). I create a set of indicators for each level of energy expenditure as an alternative measure of activity level.

The CCHS also contains information on self-reported health status. Respondents report having poor, fair, good, very good, or excellent health. I create an indicator for each of the five responses to explore potential secondary benefits from the tax credits.

The CCHS reports age in bins. I limit my sample to respondents aged 12 to 14 years, to ensure that the age group is eligible for a tax credit, where available. Children under 12 are not part of the survey. The next youngest age bin is 15 to 19 years, which includes ages that would not be eligible for a tax credit in some jurisdictions. Unfortunately, the age bins preclude the use of BMI-for-age percentiles as an outcome of interest. I further limit the sample by excluding residents of Yukon, the Northwest Territories, or Nunavut, because the CCHS combines the responses for the three territories, making it impossible to identify the tax credit environment faced by each of these respondents.

Using the tax credits and income tax levels outlined in appendix A, I calculate the reductions in tax liability for each jurisdiction and each year. Because the CCHS waves cover two calendar years, I use the average tax liability reduction over each wave's interview period. The average tax liability reduction is then matched to the jurisdiction and the interview period. One concern may be that this measure can introduce considerable measurement error if the tax credit was adopted in the second year of the interview period. In the study period, the first subsidy in each jurisdiction started in an odd-numbered year. Fortunately, because the CCHS waves also start in odd-numbered years, it will not be the case that a jurisdiction goes from no tax liability reduction in the first interview year to a tax liability reduction in the second interview year.

After these restrictions, the analyzed sample consists of 31,835 individuals. In table 1, I report the sample's descriptive statistics. Almost half of the sample self-identifies as female and almost three-quarters as racially white. Relatively few respondents are in households with a low level of education: only 3.9 percent have less than a secondary school education, and 9.7 percent have a secondary school education. The average tax liability reduction is \$69.50; and, conditional on the availability of a tax credit, the average is \$113.59. (Unless otherwise indicated, all dollar amounts reported in the study results are in 2021 Canadian dollars.) Nearly 99 percent of the sample reported participation in leisure physical activity. The likelihood of infrequent, occasional, or regular participation in leisure physical activity is 6.9 percent, 15 percent, and 78.1 percent, respectively. Almost half of the sample reported daily participation in leisure physical activity. Respondents in the sample tend to have good or better self-reported health status: only 3 percent reported fair or poor health.

METHODOLOGY

My identification strategy relies on the heterogeneity in tax liability reduction caused by changes in provincial, territorial, and federal differences in tax credit policies and personal income tax rates. I employ a weighted least squares regression at the

TABLE 1 Descriptive Statistics for the Study Sample (N = 31,835)

	Mean	Standard deviation
Demographic		
Female	0.489	0.500
White	0.734	0.442
Household's highest level of education		
Less than secondary school	0.039	0.193
Secondary school	0.097	0.296
Post-secondary	0.783	0.412
Tax liability reduction	69.50	61.01
Tax liability reduction conditional on value > 0	113.59	32.79
Frequency of leisure physical activity		
None	0.013	0.112
Infrequent	0.069	0.254
Occasional	0.150	0.357
Regular	0.781	0.414
Daily	0.488	0.500
Self-reported health status		
Excellent	0.228	0.420
Very good	0.387	0.487
Good	0.233	0.422
Fair	0.028	0.164
Poor	0.002	0.039

Notes: Reported statistics are weighted by CCHS-provided sample weights. Tax liability reduction amounts are in 2021 Canadian dollars. "Infrequent," "occasional," and "regular" are exhaustive measures of leisure physical activity. "None" is the subset of infrequent exercisers who report a monthly average of 0 leisure physical activities of at least 15 minutes. "Daily" is the subset of regular exercisers who report a monthly average of at least 30 leisure physical activities of at least 15 minutes.

individual level to estimate the impact of tax credits on activity. This approach provides easily interpreted results, identifies the average effect of tax liability reductions, and handles fixed effects well.

I begin with the following equation:

$$Y_{igt} = \alpha + \beta TLR_{gt} + \gamma X_{it} + \tau_t + \sigma_g + \varepsilon_{igt},$$

where Y_{igt} is the outcome of interest for individual i in province or territory g in period t. Each period corresponds to the two years covered by each CCHS wave. X_{it} is a vector of individual controls for age, female gender, white race, household income, and highest household educational attainment. τ_t and σ_g are fixed effects for a period and for a province or territory, respectively. ε_{igt} is the error term. TLR_{gt} is the maximum tax liability reduction in 2021 Canadian dollars in province or territory g during period t. The tax liability reduction is an average for each survey wave corresponding to a two-year period. All regressions use the CCHS-provided weights. To account for errors potentially being correlated within provinces or territories and periods, I estimate standard errors clustered by province or territory and period, using Cameron, Gelbach, and Miller's multi-way clustering procedure.[24]

I perform additional analyses that allow for effects to differ by demographic and household characteristics. Specifically, I conduct further analyses that interact TLR_{gt} with gender, race, household income quintiles, and household educational attainment indicators. These additional terms allow me to explore potential heterogeneous effects across different groups. Finally, I perform additional regressions to test the robustness of my primary results. I use energy expenditure outcomes as an alternative measure of physical activity. The energy expenditure variables are based on the METs expended in each activity, which may better account for differences in intensity across reported activities. I also look for an impact on each of the 21 CCHS-covered leisure physical activities.

The interpretation of the coefficient of interest, β, as capturing the causal impact of the tax credits on the outcomes of interest relies on several assumptions. To interpret the effect as causal, I must be able to compare what happens when treatment is received to what would have occurred in the absence of treatment. In this case, all units eventually receive treatment when a national policy is adopted. The identification instead comes from a measure of the differences in levels of treatment that individuals experience. The differences in provincial and territorial credits and tax rates provide a rich set of temporal and geographical variations, which in turn provide a wide variety of exposure to differing levels of treatment.

I also must assume that no provincial- or territorial-specific shocks are occurring that coincide with the adoption of tax credits and that persist for the duration of the tax credit programs. The policy discussion surrounding fitness tax credits did not allude to the simultaneous adoption of potentially confounding policies. Furthermore, making it less likely that a shock captures the identifying variation is the difference in the values of the tax credits in real terms over time. The changing purchasing power of the Canadian dollar provides an additional source of variation that aids in capturing the credit-induced effects.

RESULTS

Main Results

Table 2 presents the estimated effect of a tax liability reduction (TLR) of $100 on leisure physical activity. Each column shows the results from a regression on the indicated outcome of interest. I find no significant relationship between TLR and the frequency of leisure physical activity. For regular activity, which includes daily, the 95 percent confidence interval allows me to rule out effects from a TLR of $100 up to 4.4 percent of the analytic mean.

24 A. Colin Cameron, Jonah B. Gelbach, and Douglas L. Miller, "Robust Inference with Multiway Clustering" (2011) 29:2 *Journal of Business & Economic Statistics* 238-49.

TABLE 2 Effects of Fitness Tax Credits on Leisure Physical Activity

	Participant in leisure physical activity	Frequency of leisure physical activity				
		None	Infrequent	Occasional	Regular	Daily
TLR	0.002	−0.002	−0.006	0.006	0.001	0.014
	(0.004)	(0.004)	(0.009)	(0.005)	(0.014)	(0.013)
Mean	0.987	0.013	0.069	0.150	0.781	0.488
N	31,835	31,835	31,835	31,835	31,835	31,835

TLR = tax liability reduction.

Notes: Reported estimates are weighted by CCHS-provided weights. For convenience, the value of the tax credit is in hundreds of 2021 Canadian dollars. Standard errors clustered by survey and by province or territory are presented in parentheses. The sample consists of individual-level observations. The weighted analytic mean is reported. “Infrequent,” “occasional,” and “regular” are exhaustive measures of leisure physical activity. “None” is the subset of infrequent exercisers who report a monthly average of 0 leisure physical activities of at least 15 minutes. “Daily” is the subset of regular exercisers who report a monthly average of at least 30 leisure physical activities of at least 15 minutes.

I explore the sensitivity of the main results using three additional models. The results of these calculations are provided in appendix B. First, in table B3, I report the results with an additional indicator identifying whether a local tax credit is in place. Second, I use the nominal credit value rather than the tax liability reduction and report the results in table B4. Third, I estimate a model that includes an indicator for whether the local credit can be used for non-physical activities or is refundable. (Because the two policies are perfectly collinear, it is impossible to have a separate dummy for each.) I present the results in table B5. I do not find results that significantly differ from those reported in table 2 for each additional specification. The additional indicators for the presence of a local credit or the credit being refundable or applicable to non-physical activities are insignificant and do not significantly alter the estimated effect of the tax liability reduction.

Table B6 presents the estimated effects on self-reported health outcomes. I find no significant relationship between tax liability reduction and the likelihood that a respondent reported excellent, very good, good, fair, or poor health. The lack of significance should not be surprising since I found no overall significant effects on the frequency of leisure physical activity.

Next, I explore the potential heterogeneous effects of demographic and household characteristics. Table 3 explores differences by gender in panel A, by race in panel B, by household income in panel C, and by household educational attainment in panel D. I do not find compelling evidence of differences by gender, race, or household educational attainment. However, in panel C, I find some meaningful effects. A TLR of $100 is associated with an increase of roughly 13 percent in the likelihood of

TABLE 3 Heterogeneous Effects of Fitness Tax Credits on Leisure Physical Activity

	Frequency of leisure physical activity				
	None	Infrequent	Occasional	Regular	Daily
Panel A By gender					
TLR	−0.003	−0.004	0.003	0.001	0.013
	(0.005)	(0.007)	(0.002)	(0.014)	(0.014)
TLR × female	0.001	−0.003	0.005	−0.002	0.002
	(0.005)	(0.007)	(0.006)	(0.014)	(0.015)
Panel B By race					
TLR	0.000	−0.003	0.005**	−0.002	−0.001
	(0.002)	(0.014)	(0.001)	(0.015)	(0.016)
TLR × white	−0.003	−0.004	0.001	0.003	0.022
	(0.002)	(0.009)	(0.003)	(0.008)	(0.019)
Panel C By income					
TLR	0.010***	−0.009	0.017***	−0.008	−0.022
	(0.002)	(0.015)	(0.000)	(0.010)	(0.020)
TLR × quintile 2	−0.020***	0.013	−0.015	0.002	0.022
	(0.004)	(0.007)	(0.012)	(0.016)	(0.014)
TLR × quintile 3	−0.014***	0.004	−0.013	0.009	0.033
	(0.003)	(0.010)	(0.014)	(0.008)	(0.020)
TLR × quintile 4	−0.016***	−0.001	−0.011	0.012	0.059**
	(0.004)	(0.011)	(0.007)	(0.015)	(0.024)
TLR × quintile 5	−0.011***	0.001	−0.017**	0.016	0.062***
	(0.003)	(0.008)	(0.005)	(0.012)	(0.003)
Panel D By household education					
TLR	0.009**	0.007	−0.004	−0.002	−0.003
	(0.003)	(0.011)	(0.015)	(0.016)	(0.024)
TLR × secondary school	−0.013*	−0.002	0.014	−0.012	0.004
	(0.006)	(0.016)	(0.024)	(0.036)	(0.019)
TLR × post-secondary	−0.012***	−0.016***	0.011	0.005	0.023
	(0.003)	(0.004)	(0.013)	(0.013)	(0.018)

TLR = tax liability reduction.

*, **, and *** indicate statistical significance at the 10, 5, and 1 percent levels, respectively.

Notes: Reported estimates are weighted by CCHS-provided weights. For convenience, the value of the tax credit is in hundreds of 2021 Canadian dollars. Standard errors clustered by survey and by province or territory are presented in parentheses. The sample consists of individual-level observations. The weighted analytic mean is reported. "Infrequent," "occasional," and "regular" are exhaustive measures of leisure physical activity. "None" is the subset of infrequent exercisers who report a monthly average of 0 leisure physical activities of at least 15 minutes. "Daily" is the subset of regular exercisers who report a monthly average of at least 30 leisure physical activities of at least 15 minutes.

occasional leisure physical activity among individuals in the first income quintile (the 20 percent of households with the lowest income). The same TLR is associated with an increase of around 8 percent in the probability of daily leisure physical activity among children in the fourth and fifth quintiles.

Alternative Outcomes

In appendix table B7, I present the results for the total energy expenditure and the likelihood of energy expenditure levels being inactive, moderate, or active. I do not find a significant relationship between tax liability reduction and energy expenditure measures. In table B8, I conduct heterogeneity analyses analogous to those used in table 3. I observe an increase of around 10 percent in the likelihood that individuals in the fourth and fifth income quintiles will be active. This result is consistent with the finding that children in these quintiles are more likely to participate in daily leisure physical activity.

Along with the energy expenditure outcomes, I explore the specific activities covered by the survey. In figure 2, I present the point estimate and 95 percent confidence interval corresponding to a tax liability reduction of $100 for each activity. There are few activities with discernable increases or decreases. Tax liability reduction is associated with a reduction in the likelihood of golfing, an increase in the likelihood of skating, and an increase in the likelihood of swimming.

CONCLUSION AND POLICY DISCUSSION

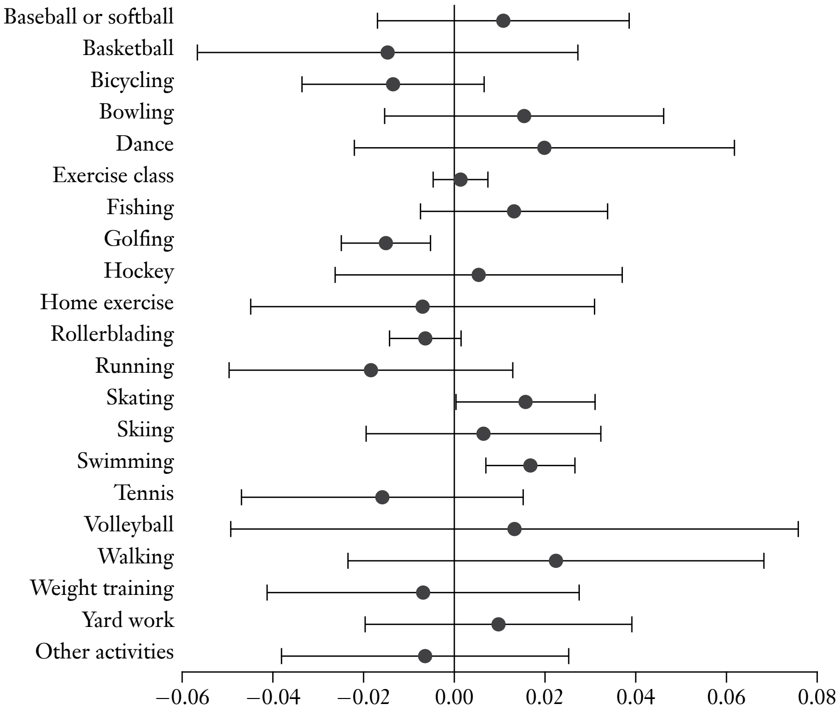
In this article, I study the relationship between tax liability reduction and leisure physical activity among Canadian youth. I use provincial, territorial, and federal children's fitness tax credits and tax rates as a source of variation in tax liability reduction between 2001 and 2014. I use CCHS data to examine the frequency of leisure physical activity, self-reported health status, and energy expenditure.

I find no significant effects of tax liability reduction on the frequency of leisure physical activity, health status, or energy expenditure. At the upper end of the 95 percent confidence interval, the estimated effect of a $100 tax liability reduction on leisure physical activity participation is less than 1 percent, and the estimated effect on the likelihood of regular physical activity participation is less than 5 percent. I find some evidence that the tax liability reduction resulted in an increase in the frequency of leisure physical activity and active energy expenditure among children in households in the upper 40 percent of households based on income.

Requiring registration in physical activity to take advantage of the tax liability reduction may be a barrier to families with considerable time, transportation, financial (equipment is not necessarily covered), or other constraints. Prior research has found that higher-income families are more aware of and more likely to claim the tax credits.[25] The finding that a tax liability reduction of $100 resulted in an increase

25 Fisher et al., supra note 18. See also Stearns et al., supra note 16, and Spence et al., supra note 17.

FIGURE 2 Effects of Fitness Tax Credits on Specific Leisure Physical Activities



Notes: The estimated coefficient and 95 percent confidence intervals corresponding to a tax liability reduction of $100 are shown for each indicated exercise. Reported estimates are weighted by CCHS-provided weights.

in daily or active energy expenditure among the highest two quintiles of household income shows that the limited exercise benefits were concentrated among better-off households. The increase is relatively small compared to the tax revenue lost; that is, the tax liability reduction likely served as a rebate for many families that would have enrolled their child in physical activity with or without the fitness tax credit.

As of 2021, five provinces and territories have kept, readopted, or newly adopted children's fitness tax credits. The use of tax credits to increase children's physical activity levels appears to be an expensive policy—$286 million of forgone tax revenue in 2013[26]—particularly in light of the limited progress achieved toward meeting its goal. It would be beneficial to explore whether the increased levels of activity among children in higher-income families result in improved BMI or healthier habits persisting into adulthood. One opportunity for potential improvement is relaxation of the

26 See Sauder, supra note 14.

barriers imposed by the tax credits' conditional requirements. Allowing reimbursement for any sporting equipment, rather than registration costs, may help to alleviate some of the obstacles faced by less advantaged families. However, it is possible that potential delays in receiving the credit or other existing barriers could dampen the effects of relaxed policies.

APPENDIX A FITNESS TAX CREDITS IN CANADA: FEDERAL, PROVINCIAL, AND TERRITORIAL, 2001-2021

Canada

In 2007, Canada implemented the national children's fitness tax credit (CFTC). The CFTC allowed a claim of up to $500 (non-refundable) for costs incurred in registering a child aged 16 years or younger in an eligible physical activity program. In 2014, the value of the credit was increased to $1,000. The credit became refundable in 2015. The credit was reduced to $500 in 2016 and eliminated in 2017. The applicable income tax rate was 15 percent.

Alberta

Alberta did not have a fitness tax credit in this period (2001-2021).

British Columbia

British Columbia introduced its child fitness credit in 2012. The value of the non-refundable credit was up to $500 for expenses incurred in registering a child aged 16 years or younger in an eligible physical activity program. In 2015, the child fitness equipment tax credit was introduced, providing a non-refundable credit for up to half of the amount claimed under the BC child fitness credit. Both credits ended in 2018. The applicable tax rate was 5.06 percent.

Manitoba

Manitoba introduced its children's fitness tax credit in 2007. The value of the non-refundable credit was up to $500 for costs of registering a child aged 16 years or younger in an eligible physical activity program. The credit was renamed the fitness tax credit in 2011 and expanded to include young adults up to the age of 24. The applicable tax rate was 10.9 percent in 2007-8 and 10.8 percent in 2009 onward.

New Brunswick

New Brunswick did not have a fitness tax credit in this period.

Newfoundland and Labrador

Newfoundland and Labrador implemented its physical activity tax credit in 2021. The value of the refundable credit is up to $2,000 per family. Eligible expenses are those incurred in registering for a physical activity program. The applicable tax rate is 8.7 percent.

Northwest Territories

The Northwest Territories did not have a fitness tax credit in this period.

Nova Scotia

Nova Scotia implemented its healthy living tax credit in 2005. The value of the non-refundable credit was up to $500 for children up to the age of 18 years. The credit was available for registration in a physical activity. The credit ended in 2015. The applicable tax rate was 8.79 percent.

Nunavut

Nunavut did not have a fitness tax credit in this period.

Ontario

Ontario implemented its children's activity tax credit in 2010. The value of the refundable credit was up to $500 for costs incurred in registering a child aged 16 years or younger in a physical activity program. The credit could also be used for certain non-physical activities. The credit was indexed for inflation. In chronological order, the value of the credit for 2011-2016 was $509, $526, $535, $541, $551, and $560. The credit ended in 2017. The applicable tax rate was 5.05 percent.

Prince Edward Island

Prince Edward Island implemented its children's wellness tax credit in 2021. The non-refundable credit covers registration costs for eligible activities (physical and non-physical) for children under 18 years of age. The applicable tax rate is 9.8 percent.

Quebec

Quebec implemented its tax credit for children's activity in 2013. Costs incurred in registering children aged 5 to 16 years can be claimed. The refundable tax credit is worth up to 20 percent of the expenses incurred, with a maximum of $100 of eligible fees in 2013. The credit can be used for qualifying physical and non-physical activities. The maximum amount of eligible fees increased by $100 per year until it reached $500 in 2017. The personal income tax rate is not applicable; instead, the value of the refundable credit is 20 percent of the eligible costs.

Saskatchewan

Saskatchewan implemented its active families benefit in 2009. The refundable benefit covers children aged 6 to 14 years during the tax year. The amount of the benefit is up to $150 per child. The eligible age limit was extended to children under 18 in 2012. In 2016, the benefit ended. The benefit was reinstated for children aged 18 or younger whose families had adjusted income less than or equal to $60,000 in 2021. The personal income tax rate is not applicable in calculating the amount of the benefit.

Yukon

Yukon implemented its child fitness credit in 2007. Initially, the non-refundable credit was for up to $500 of expenses incurred in registering a child under 16 years of age in eligible activities. The credit became refundable and increased to $1,000 in 2014. The applicable tax rate was 7.04 percent from 2007 to 2014 and 6.4 percent starting in 2015.

canadian tax journal / revue fiscale canadienne (2024) 72:3, 595-97
https://doi.org/10.32721/ctj.2024.72.3.pf.editors

Policy Forum: Editors' Introduction— Recent Amendments to the General Anti-Avoidance Rule

Canada's general anti-avoidance rule (GAAR), in section 245 of the Income Tax Act,[1] was introduced in 1988. Over the next 35 years, the legislation was amended only twice: in 2004, subsection 245(4) was amended, with retroactive effect, to include references to other legislation, regulations, and tax treaties; and in 2022, the definitions of "tax benefit" and "tax consequences" in subsection 245(1) were amended to include possible future tax savings. During the same period, a substantial body of jurisprudence developed regarding the interpretation and application of GAAR, including several decisions of the Supreme Court of Canada. The framework for the GAAR analysis that is currently undertaken by the courts was originally established by the Supreme Court of Canada in its first GAAR decision in 2005, *Canada Trustco Mortgage Co. v. Canada*.[2]

The new amendments that are the subject of this Policy Forum follow from the Department of Finance's 2022 consultation paper.[3] Elements of the amendments stem directly from the consultation paper, including almost verbatim the portion of the preamble of paragraph 245(0.1)(b). According to the consultation paper, "[t]he GAAR was intended to strike a balance between taxpayers' need for certainty in planning their affairs and the government's responsibility to protect the tax base and the fairness of the tax system."[4]

Bill C-59,[5] enacted in June 2024, includes several significant amendments to GAAR, including the introduction of the aforementioned preamble; the change in the threshold for "avoidance transaction" in subsection 245(3) from "primarily" to "one of the main purposes"; the introduction of an "economic substance" test in subsections 245(4.1)

1 RSC 1985, c. 1 (5th Supp.), as amended (herein referred to as "the Act"). Unless otherwise stated, statutory references in this introduction are to the Act.

2 2005 SCC 54.

3 Canada, Department of Finance, *Modernizing and Strengthening the General Anti-Avoidance Rule: Consultation Paper* (Ottawa: Department of Finance, 2022).

4 Ibid., at 4.

5 Bill C-59, An Act To Implement Certain Provisions of the Fall Economic Statement Tabled in Parliament on November 21, 2023 and Certain Provisions of the Budget Tabled in Parliament on March 28, 2023, enacted by SC 2024, c. 15; royal assent June 20, 2024.

and (4.2), applicable in determining whether there has been abusive tax avoidance under subsection 245(4); and the introduction of a penalty in subsection 245(5.1).

The three articles in this Policy Forum examine aspects of these amendments, focusing in particular on the impact that they may have on future GAAR jurisprudence.

In the first article, Pooja Mihailovich provides a comprehensive overview of the amendments, including the history behind their introduction. In her view, while the amendments will introduce new interpretive issues to be dealt with in the jurisprudence, "courts should continue to exercise restraint in applying this provision, lest the basis for [GAAR's] application devolve into a social fairness analysis that is neither rigorous nor principled."[6]

In the second article, Richard Krever compares and contrasts the Canadian GAAR jurisprudence with jurisprudence under the Australian GAAR, highlighting the role that purpose plays as a threshold in these two Anglo GAARs. He expresses skepticism about whether the recent Canadian changes will be successful in enabling the Canada Revenue Agency (CRA) to successfully challenge arrangements involving "legitimate commercial transactions," unless the economic substance test broadens the concept of abuse. An exploration of the evolution of Australian GAAR jurisprudence does not suggest that the changes to section 245 will have much consequence.

The final article, by David Ross, focuses on the interaction between GAAR and statutory bright-line rules. Ross explores the notion of a "purpose error," which occurs when a court overemphasizes an abstract purpose in applying GAAR. He considers how the Supreme Court's 2023 decision in *Deans Knight Income Corp. v. Canada*,[7] and the new preamble to GAAR, in which "certainty" is confined to a desire of taxpayers and not necessarily a desire of the CRA in administering the Act, might affect a GAAR analysis where other statutory provisions containing artificial bright lines are involved. These bright lines include the specific time periods applicable under the superficial loss rules[8] and the property-flipping rules,[9] and the specific share ownership thresholds applicable for foreign affiliate status (and the deductions available under subsection 113(1) flowing therefrom), as well as for part IV tax purposes. Ultimately, Ross identifies several questions that courts might pose in adjudicating whether GAAR should apply to transactions that rely on a bright-line provision.

It will likely be many years before a case involving the amendments is decided by the Supreme Court of Canada.[10] Until then, it will be unclear to what extent these

6 Pooja Mihailovich, "Policy Forum: GAAR Revisited—A Road Map for Continued Analytical Rigour," elsewhere in this feature, at 615.

7 2023 SCC 16.

8 Including subparagraph 40(2)(g)(i) and the definition of "superficial loss" in section 54, subsections 40(3.4) to (3.6), and subsections 13(21.2) and 18(13) to (15).

9 Subsections 12(12) to (14).

10 *Canada Trustco*, supra note 2, was decided approximately 17 years after the introduction of GAAR.

amendments may affect the framework for a GAAR analysis as articulated by the Supreme Court in *Canada Trustco*. This collection of articles provides food for thought on the impact that the amendments may have on that analytical framework.

Kim Brooks
Kevin Milligan
Daniel Sandler
Editors

canadian tax journal / revue fiscale canadienne (2024) 72:3, 599-615
https://doi.org/10.32721/ctj.2024.72.3.pf.mihailovich

Policy Forum: GAAR Revisited—A Road Map for Continued Analytical Rigour

Pooja Mihailovich*

PRÉCIS

De nouveaux problèmes d'interprétation émergent des modifications de la règle générale anti-évitement (RGAE), notamment l'inclusion d'un nouveau préambule et d'un critère de substance économique, ainsi que la possibilité d'une pénalité s'appliquant aux cas d'évitement fiscal abusif. Dans cet article, l'auteure présente son point de vue d'avocate plaidante sur la manière dont les tribunaux sont susceptibles d'aborder ces problèmes. Bien que les modifications étaient justifiées étant donné qu'elles visaient à « moderniser » la RGAE, elles servent en grande partie à codifier les principes existants, qui ont été soigneusement établis à la suite de nombreuses années de jurisprudence. L'auteure souligne que les tribunaux devraient se fier à ces principes pour s'assurer que l'analyse de la RGAE est réalisée avec la même rigueur analytique que celle dont ont fait preuve les tribunaux jusqu'à maintenant. De plus, compte tenu de la pénalité importante qui pourrait être imposée lorsque la RGAE s'applique, les tribunaux devraient insister sur un renforcement du fondement probatoire et un rehaussement de la norme de ce qui constitue un abus.

ABSTRACT

New interpretive issues arise from the amendments to the general anti-avoidance rule (GAAR), including the introduction of a novel preamble and an economic substance test, as well as the potential for a penalty to apply where abusive tax avoidance is found. In this article, the author provides a litigator's perspective on how these issues might be addressed by the courts. Although the amendments have been justified on the basis that they were intended to "modernize" GAAR, they serve in large part to codify existing principles that have been carefully developed through years of jurisprudence. The author emphasizes that the courts should rely on those principles to ensure that the GAAR analysis is undertaken with the same analytical rigour as has been judicially developed to date. Moreover, given the potential for a substantial

* Of Osler Hoskin & Harcourt LLP, Toronto (e-mail: pmihailovich@osler.com). I am grateful to the Honourable Marc Noël for his insightful comments and guidance. I would also like to thank Leandra Gupta for her assistance in research and editing. Any error or omission is my responsibility.

penalty to be imposed where GAAR is found to apply, courts should insist on a stronger evidentiary foundation and a higher standard for a finding of misuse or abuse.

KEYWORDS: GAAR ■ TAX AVOIDANCE ■ ANTI-AVOIDANCE ■ STATUTORY INTERPRETATION ■ COURTS ■ TAX LITIGATION

CONTENTS

Plus ça change, plus c'est la même chose.

Jean-Baptiste Alphonse Karr, *Les Guêpes* [The Wasps] (January 1849)

INTRODUCTION

Canada's general anti-avoidance rule[1] (GAAR) is at a critical point in its evolution. Since its enactment more than 35 years ago, it has served as an effective tool for preventing abusive tax avoidance. The courts have developed a rigorous analytical framework to determine whether GAAR should apply and have continually sought to balance the need for certainty in tax planning against the desire to combat abuse.[2]

The record to date shows that the existing GAAR framework has largely achieved this objective. When legislative amendments to GAAR were first proposed in 2022, the minister of national revenue had lost approximately 24 cases, despite having assessed taxpayers under GAAR in more than 1,300 instances.[3] Despite this enviable track record, the amendments were aimed at "modernizing" GAAR.[4]

1 Section 245 of the Income Tax Act, RSC 1985, c. 1 (5th Supp.), as amended (herein referred to as "the Act"). Unless otherwise stated, statutory references in this article are to the Act.

2 The decision of the Supreme Court of Canada in *Copthorne Holdings Ltd. v. Canada*, 2011 SCC 63, could be considered the high-water mark in this regard.

3 Canada, Department of Finance, *Modernizing and Strengthening the General Anti-Avoidance Rule, Consultation Paper* (Ottawa: Department of Finance, 2022) (herein referred to as "the consultation paper"), at 7 and 37, annex A. The irony of this statistic is manifest given the observations of the Supreme Court of Canada in *Deans Knight Income Corp. v. Canada*, 2023 SCC 16, at paragraph 49 (emphasis added): "By virtue of the rigorous analysis required by s. 245, *the GAAR only affects a small subset of transactions*, largely conducted by sophisticated parties with the ability to properly evaluate the risks inherent in a GAAR reassessment."

4 The amendments are contained in Bill C-59, An Act To Implement Certain Provisions of the Fall Economic Statement Tabled in Parliament on November 21, 2023 and Certain Provisions of the Budget Tabled in Parliament on March 28, 2023, enacted by SC 2024, c. 15; royal assent June 20, 2024.

The genesis of these changes can be traced in part to a politically motivated mandate letter issued by the prime minister to the minister of finance,[5] directing that "all Canadians and businesses contribute their fair share to a stronger economic recovery"[6] and that various legislative amendments be considered to give effect to that directive.

The mandate letter was issued a mere month after a majority of the Supreme Court of Canada decided *Alta Energy* in favour of the taxpayer—the first decision of that court to consider the application of GAAR to a tax treaty.[7] In that case, for the first time, the dissenting judges spoke of the need to strike a "balance between the uncertainty inherent in the GAAR and *the fairness of the Canadian tax system as a whole*."[8]

Although it is difficult to attribute these observations and the change in political and judicial temperament to any one cause, it is obvious that the public profile of tax avoidance has changed radically in the last decade, and that there is heightened sensitivity toward tax planning in general.

Even before the amendments were proposed, GAAR was perceived as a source of uncertainty in a relatively structured tax system. The amendments have only enhanced that perception. Additional interpretive issues have arisen in considering the scope of the amendments, marking a new era in the evolution of GAAR. Such issues surround the introduction of a novel preamble, the inclusion of an "economic substance" test, and the potential for a substantial penalty to be levied where GAAR is found to apply.[9]

Although it is debatable whether GAAR needed fine-tuning, the question arises: To what extent will the amendments affect the way that GAAR operates? To maintain consistency in the application of GAAR, the goal should be to ensure that the analysis remains both principled and rooted in the framework that has been judicially developed to date. None of the amendments should be viewed by the courts as a

5 Mandate letters typically outline the objectives that each minister will work to accomplish, as well as the pressing challenges that they will address in their role. See Canada, Office of the Prime Minister, Deputy Prime Minister and Minister of Finance Mandate Letter, December 16, 2021 (www.pm.gc.ca/en/mandate-letters/2021/12/16/deputy-prime-minister-and-minister-finance-mandate-letter) (herein referred to as "the mandate letter"). See also Brian R. Carr, Brittany D. Rossler, and Molly Martin, "What Is a Tax Planner To Do After Deans Knight?" Corporate Tax Planning feature (2024) 72:1 *Canadian Tax Journal* 231-80, at 269 (citing Jinyan Li, Marshall Rothstein, Steve Suarez, and Jeffrey Trossman, "Deeper into the Knight: Exploring Deans Knight and Its Effects on the Canadian GAAR" (2023) 111:13 *Tax Notes International* 1639-59, at 1655): "We agree with Li et al., who state that the amendments appear more politically motivated than tax-policy-oriented."

6 The mandate letter, supra note 5.

7 *Canada v. Alta Energy Luxembourg SARL*, 2021 SCC 49.

8 Ibid., at paragraph 101 (emphasis added).

9 The amendments also include a change to the definition of "avoidance transaction." As amended, an avoidance transaction is a transaction "one of the main purposes" of which is to obtain a tax benefit. This article does not address this amendment in any detail.

reason to deviate from the analytical rigour that is mandated by GAAR and that remains its defining feature.[10]

THE GAAR FRAMEWORK: A SNAPSHOT OF THE GOVERNING PRINCIPLES

GAAR inevitably introduces a degree of unpredictability into tax planning.[11] Recognizing this reality, the courts have developed a comprehensive framework to determine whether GAAR should apply in a particular case. This framework and the principles that underlie it reflect the courts' effort to respect Parliament's intention that GAAR be invoked with caution.[12]

Despite the recent changes, the more significant principles that informed the GAAR analysis of the past should continue to inform the application of GAAR in future cases.[13] These principles are briefly reviewed below.

A necessary part of the governing GAAR framework is to determine whether there is a tax benefit and, if one is found, to ascertain whether there has been an avoidance transaction. To the extent that an avoidance transaction is found, a central element of the misuse and abuse analysis is to first identify the object, spirit, and purpose, or the "underlying rationale," behind the provisions that are relied on, and then determine whether that rationale has been defeated or frustrated by the avoidance transaction(s) in issue.[14]

The onus on the Crown is both to establish the underlying rationale and to show that it was not fully captured by the text of the relevant provisions.[15] The rationale must be grounded in the provisions themselves, the scheme of the Act, and permissible extrinsic aids,[16] and *not* on the broader policy objectives underlying the Act.[17]

10 *Deans Knight*, supra note 3, at paragraph 50, citing Pooja Samtani and Justin Kutyan, "GAAR Revisited: From Instinctive Reaction to Intellectual Rigour" (2014) 62:2 *Canadian Tax Journal* 401-28, at 403.

11 *Husky Energy Inc. v. The King*, 2023 TCC 167, at paragraph 298.

12 *Copthorne*, supra note 2, at paragraph 67: "A court must be mindful that a decision supporting a GAAR assessment in a particular case may have implications for innumerable 'everyday' transactions of taxpayers. . . . Because of the potential to affect so many transactions, the court must approach a GAAR decision cautiously."

13 "Except in so far as they are clearly and unambiguously intended to do so, statutes should not be construed so as to make any alteration in the common law or to change *any established principle of law*." Ruth Sullivan, *Sullivan on the Construction of Statutes*, 6th ed. (Markham, ON: LexisNexis Canada, 2014), at 538 (emphasis added), citing *Halsbury's Laws of England*, 3d ed., vol. 36 (London, UK: Butterworths, 1961), at 412, paragraph 625. The various principles developed over time governing the interpretation and application of GAAR are now firmly established in the law.

14 *Deans Knight*, supra note 3, at paragraph 56.

15 *Canada Trustco Mortgage Co. v. Canada*, 2005 SCC 54, at paragraphs 64 and 65.

16 Ibid., at paragraphs 41 and 42.

17 *Alta Energy*, supra note 7, at paragraph 49.

In applying GAAR, courts have been cautioned against conflating a transaction that is primarily (or even solely) tax-motivated with a transaction that is abusive.[18] The role of the court is to conduct an objective, thorough, and step-by-step review of the provisions in issue.[19] The court must then anchor its search for the underlying rationale in a textual, contextual, and purposive analysis of those provisions.[20] This is what gives GAAR its legitimacy, since taxpayers can hardly be required to comply with unwritten rules unless they are rationally discernible.

The Act is dominated by express provisions dictating specific results. Where Parliament has expressed its intention and specified precisely the conditions that must be satisfied to achieve a particular result, a taxpayer is entitled to rely on those conditions.[21] There may accordingly be cases where the underlying rationale of a provision is found to be no broader than its text.[22] In other cases, the means selected by drafters and endorsed by Parliament to give effect to the rationale behind a provision may not provide a full answer as to why the provision was adopted.[23] In such cases, a court must go further in ascertaining legislative intent.[24]

In conducting the GAAR analysis, it is important to consider the existence and interplay of relevant specific anti-avoidance provisions. GAAR was intended to catch unforeseen abusive tax strategies, but if Parliament drafts specific anti-avoidance provisions in a way that leaves open a clearly foreseeable gap, this may be an indication that the gap is intentional, in which case relying on it should not be considered abusive.[25] That said, there is no bar to the application of GAAR in situations where the Act specifies precise qualifying conditions.[26]

Finally, the Act is replete with diverse and at times competing policy choices. Determining whether an avoidance transaction (undertaken in reliance on a specific policy choice) has resulted in abusive tax avoidance is an exercise in statutory interpretation. It should not be driven by value judgments or theories about how the Act ought to operate. In other words, the analysis cannot be results-oriented.[27]

18 Ibid., at paragraph 47.

19 *Copthorne*, supra note 2, at paragraph 68.

20 Ibid., at paragraph 70.

21 *Canada Trustco*, supra note 15, at paragraph 11.

22 *Copthorne*, supra note 2, at paragraph 110. In such cases, the Crown will not discharge its burden by asserting that the avoidance transaction exploits the specificity of the relevant text. See *Lehigh Cement Limited v. Canada*, 2010 FCA 124, at paragraph 37; and *McClarty Family Trust v. The Queen*, 2012 TCC 80, at paragraph 55.

23 *Deans Knight*, supra note 3, at paragraph 59.

24 Ibid., at paragraph 68.

25 Ibid., at paragraphs 153 and 154. See also *Canada v. Landrus*, 2009 FCA 113, at paragraph 47.

26 *Deans Knight*, supra note 3, at paragraph 72.

27 *Copthorne*, supra note 2, at paragraph 70.

PLACING THE PREAMBLE: A PRECURSOR TO THE MISUSE AND ABUSE ANALYSIS

Over decades of jurisprudence, the GAAR framework has been refined to the point where the principles for its application are reasonably well settled. Nevertheless, the amendments include a preamble that explicitly describes the intended role of GAAR.[28]

In essence, the preamble declares that (1) GAAR applies to deny tax benefits resulting from abusive tax avoidance while allowing taxpayers to obtain tax benefits contemplated by the relevant provisions; and (2) GAAR strikes a balance between the need for taxpayer certainty and the responsibility of the government to protect the tax base and the fairness of the tax system.

A generic introductory statement of this nature is a departure from legislative drafting norms in the Canadian tax context.[29] Such a statement has a limited role to play in the interpretive analysis of a provision, particularly where (as here) competing interests are in play. The explanatory notes confirm that the preamble is not part of the GAAR framework, but is intended to emphasize "key considerations" relating to the purpose and operation of GAAR.[30] On this basis, the preamble should at most be viewed as a "largely political statement" regarding the "social context in which" GAAR was enacted and amended.[31]

The preamble to the amended GAAR introduces a distinct concept of fairness that is divorced from the principles of predictability and certainty, which are often cited concurrently with the principle of fairness. Instead of presenting the three principles as necessarily linked, the preamble alludes to balancing taxpayer certainty with "fairness of the tax system"—an undefined concept that is seemingly tied to protecting the tax base.[32] According to the Department of Finance, "fairness" in this sense is used broadly, "reflecting the unfair distributional effects of tax avoidance as it shifts the tax burden from those willing and able to avoid taxes to those who are not."[33]

The goal, as it relates to the concept of fairness, should be to ensure that taxpayers know what the law is and how they can follow it. This conception of fairness—in

---

28 Bill C-59, supra note 4, section 66(1).

29 In contrast, for example, the Australian Income Tax Assessment Act 1997, No. 38 of 1997, which is generally divided into chapters, divisions, and subdivisions, contains object statements at the beginning of most divisions and subdivisions.

30 Canada, Department of Finance, *Explanatory Notes Relating to the Income Tax Act and Regulations* (Ottawa: Department of Finance, November 2023) (herein referred to as "the 2023 explanatory notes"). See also the Interpretation Act, RSC 1985, c. I-23, section 13, which provides that the "preamble of an enactment shall be read as a part of the enactment intended to assist in explaining its purport and object."

31 J. Paul Salembier, *Legal and Legislative Drafting*, 2d ed. (Markham, ON: LexisNexis Canada, 2018), at 435.

32 Bill C-59, supra note 4, section 66(1). One of the objectives of the mandate letter, supra note 5, was to ensure that all Canadians and businesses "contribute their fair share."

33 Canada, Department of Finance, 2023 Budget, Tax Measures: Supplementary Information, March 28, 2023, at 38.

its most basic form—is an expression of the rule-of-law principle. In other words, there should be fairness for the taxpayer who is subject to the exercise of state power as reflected in tax legislation, not fairness in, or for, the tax system itself.

Legislators are (presumably) equipped to assess "the distributional effects of tax avoidance," but courts are simply not.[34] The inclusion of a distributional concept of fairness in the preamble may be unsurprising given the context of the amendments to GAAR generally.[35] However, even if one accepts the general presumption that the addition of this statutory text is not superfluous, judges will continue to focus (as they must) on the operative provisions of the Act.

The application of GAAR centres on the provisions allegedly misused or abused, and the expression of legislative intent, as anchored in those provisions. An objectively rigorous examination of the specific provisions in issue must triumph over vague notions of what Parliament might have intended or what might be perceived by either the minister or a court to be "fair" from a systemic perspective. As the Supreme Court of Canada has emphasized, "the principles of certainty, predictability and fairness do not play an independent role; rather, they are reflected in the carefully calibrated test that Parliament crafted in s. 245 of the Act and in its interpretation by [the] Court."[36]

Finally, the Supreme Court of Canada has explained that, when interpreting a complex legislative scheme, it is necessary to avoid fixating on one objective to the exclusion of others. Primary legislative purposes, however important, "are not pursued at all costs and are clearly intended to be balanced with other important interests within the context of a carefully calibrated scheme."[37] Stated differently, the overarching purpose of one particular legislative scheme (such as the kind purportedly expressed by the new preamble to GAAR) cannot be the decisive factor in the analysis.[38] Rather, the analysis must be grounded in other indicators of legislative purpose that are specific to the provisions in issue.

SITUATING ECONOMIC SUBSTANCE: THE NEED TO ANCHOR THE ALLEGED ABUSE IN THE ACT

GAAR, as it has been interpreted to date, respects the foundational principle in Canadian tax law that transactions are to be tested according to their legal substance—

34 *Canada Trustco*, supra note 15, at paragraph 41; and *Alta Energy*, supra note 7, at paragraph 96.

35 As acknowledged in the consultation paper, supra note 3, at 6, the need for change was justified in the context of "other efforts to improve the integrity of the Canadian income tax system," including the enhancement of Canada's mandatory disclosure rules, proposed changes to the transfer-pricing rules, and the prospect of Canada's participation in a two-pillar plan for international tax reform, as part of the Inclusive Framework on Base Erosion and Profit Shifting established by the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development together with the Group of Twenty.

36 *Deans Knight*, supra note 3, at paragraph 50.

37 *Sun Indalex Finance, LLC v. United Steelworkers*, 2013 SCC 6, at paragraph 174.

38 *R v. Rafilovich*, 2019 SCC 51, at paragraph 30.

that is, the substantive rights and obligations created between parties. The 1988 explanatory notes accompanying the original enactment of GAAR stated that the Act is intended to apply to transactions with "real economic substance."[39] The Supreme Court of Canada has explained that this principle operates in the GAAR analysis to recognize that "the provisions of the Act were intended to apply to transactions that were executed within the object, spirit and purpose" of the relevant provisions giving rise to the disputed tax benefit.[40]

In jurisdictions that give priority to economic substance over legal form, the focus is generally not on the purpose of a transaction or whether it is tax-driven, but on whether a series of transactions, taken as a whole, gives rise to an economic result that is different from the results of the legal character of the individual transactions.[41] That is not the case in Canada, and the amendments to GAAR do not create a new alternate reality within the current system. However, these amendments do incorporate a new test at the misuse or abuse stage of the analysis, to assess whether the disputed transactions "significantly" lack "economic substance."[42]

The concept of economic substance is itself capable of various interpretations. Accordingly, the amended GAAR includes three factors that establish that a transaction is significantly lacking in economic substance.[43] Each factor in this non-exhaustive list focuses on the weighting of tax considerations relative to the economic benefit(s) of the transaction(s) in issue. In this regard, the new economic substance test manifestly overlaps with the factors that are necessarily considered at the avoidance transaction stage of the analysis.[44]

39 Canada, Department of Finance, *Explanatory Notes to Proposed Tax Legislation (Bill C-139)* (Ottawa: Department of Finance, June 1988), at 326 (herein referred to as "the 1988 explanatory notes").

40 *Canada Trustco*, supra note 15, at paragraph 56.

41 One such example would be the characterization of rights and obligations arising from a series of transactions as resulting economically in a loan transaction even though the relevant agreements purport to create an equity investment.

42 Bill C-59, supra note 4, section 66(3). The directive to explicitly introduce the concept of economic substance into GAAR originated in the prime minister's office rather than the Department of Finance. In the mandate letter, supra note 5, the minister of finance was instructed by the prime minister to ensure that changes be made to ensure that all taxpayers pay their "fair share" of tax, including by "[m]odernizing the general anti-avoidance rule regime to focus on economic substance."

43 It is not required that all three factors be satisfied for a transaction to be viewed as significantly lacking in economic substance. The test will be met if any enumerated factor is present or, since the list is non-exhaustive, if another undefined factor is present. In addition, the 2023 explanatory notes, supra note 30, clarify that economic substance is "generally" assessed by examining the series, but note that there may be situations where a transaction, or a subset of transactions within the series, should be used to assess economic substance instead.

44 See the definition of "avoidance transaction" in subsection 245(1), and *Copthorne*, supra note 2, at paragraphs 120 to 121. See also the consultation paper, supra note 3, at 22, which concedes that "the avoidance transaction test is, in a sense, a form of economic substance test."

Under the amended GAAR, if a transaction is found to significantly lack economic substance, this will be "an important consideration" that "tends to indicate" that the transaction results in abusive tax avoidance.[45]

It remains to be seen how language such as "significantly lacking," "important consideration," "tends to indicate," and "almost entire" will be interpreted by the courts.[46] However, the 2023 explanatory notes suggest, without legislative support, that if the transaction or series of transactions in issue is found to significantly lack economic substance "the starting point would be that there is a misuse or abuse."[47] This language is troubling, since many related-party transactions may be considered significantly lacking in economic substance, on the basis of the three factors, but would not otherwise be considered to result in a misuse or abuse.

The amended GAAR contemplates that a transaction, or a series of transactions, may be significantly lacking in economic substance without being abusive. However, it is unclear how the economic substance test should interact with the underlying rationale of the relevant provisions, so that courts might determine whether there has been a misuse or abuse in a manner that adheres to, and is consistent with, that rationale. The answer lies in the GAAR analysis itself.

The political desire to incorporate an explicit economic substance test was justified on the basis that courts do not regularly or expressly apply such a test when determining whether an avoidance transaction is subject to GAAR.[48] This concern was evidently animated, in part, by comments made by the Supreme Court in *Canada Trustco*.[49]

When those comments are considered in context, the concern appears unfounded. *In the specific factual context of that case*, the court rejected the Crown's argument that the transactions suffered from a "lack of substance" because that argument amounted

45 Bill C-59, supra note 4, section 66(3).

46 Ibid. One of the factors for establishing a significant lack of economic substance is whether it is reasonable to conclude that the entire, "or almost entire," purpose of the transaction was to obtain the tax benefit.

47 The 2023 explanatory notes, supra note 30, at 329. The prior draft of the proposed amendments to GAAR imposed a rebuttable "presumption" such that if an avoidance transaction was found to significantly lack economic substance, the transaction would be presumed to result in a misuse or abuse. It can be inferred that a deliberate choice was made not to proceed with this approach, suggesting a clear intention that the Crown is to retain the onus of establishing a misuse or abuse.

48 The consultation paper, supra note 3, at 22 (footnotes omitted): "Some cases may suggest that economic substance is a factor that is given weight in GAAR decisions. However, other cases tend to minimize the role and weight accorded economic substance. Moreover, those cases that show some deference to economic substance usually involve some type of attribute duplication, preservation or manipulation and are found to be abusive on that basis. In any event, this limited or *ad hoc* role for economic substance is unsatisfying from a policy perspective." This was also confirmed by the Department of Finance at the 2023 International Fiscal Association round table.

49 In fact, the 2023 explanatory notes, supra note 30, at 332, expressly acknowledge that one of the factors for establishing that a transaction significantly lacks economic substance "is intended to capture situations like that described in the *Canada Trustco* (2005 SCC 54) decision."

to "a narrow consideration of the 'economic substance' of the transaction, viewed in isolation from a textual, contextual and purposive interpretation of the . . . provisions."[50] As to the relationship between "lack of substance" and abuse, the court concluded that a transaction may be considered artificial or to lack substance "with respect to specific provisions of [the Act], if allowing a tax benefit would not be consistent with the object, spirit or purpose of those provisions."[51]

These observations were predicated on the court's careful—and predominantly textual—analysis of how to approach GAAR to "achieve *balance* between the need to address abusive tax avoidance while preserving certainty, predictability and fairness in tax law."[52] The decision in *Copthorne*[53] offered a more sophisticated framework for conducting and emphasizing contextual and purposive interpretation, but it remains the case that considering economic substance "in isolation from the proper interpretation of specific provisions of the Act"[54] would risk disturbing this carefully struck balance.

Despite what is suggested in the consultation paper, the Supreme Court did not ignore economic substance, but instead insisted that it be considered in a manner that aligns with the underlying rationale of the relevant provisions. The same applies to lower courts. For example, in a trilogy of cases involving transactions that "shifted value" from one class of shares to another and resulted in "paper losses,"[55] the Federal Court of Appeal accepted the Crown's argument that the underlying rationale of the relevant loss provisions required the taxpayer to suffer a real economic loss. Since the taxpayer did not, GAAR was held to apply.[56]

Given that the new economic substance test must be applied at the misuse and abuse stage of the GAAR analysis, it cannot be divorced from the otherwise rigorous examination of legislative rationale that is required at this stage. As the Supreme Court has repeatedly cautioned, the analysis must be founded on the provisions involved, lest it turn into "a value judgment of what is right or wrong [or] . . . what tax law ought to be or ought to do."[57]

---

50 *Canada Trustco*, supra note 15, at paragraph 76.

51 Ibid., at paragraph 60 (emphasis omitted).

52 Ibid., at paragraph 61 (emphasis added).

53 *Copthorne*, supra note 2.

54 *Canada Trustco*, supra note 15, at paragraph 76.

55 *Triad Gestco Ltd. v. Canada*, 2012 FCA 258; *1207192 Ontario Limited v. Canada*, 2012 FCA 259; and *Global Equity*, infra note 81 (FCA).

56 More recently, see *DEML Investments Limited v. The King*, 2024 TCC 27, at paragraphs 42 et seq. More particularly, see *DEML*, ibid., at paragraph 47 (emphasis added), per Russell J: "GAAR, where the applicable OSP has been abused, should prevent a taxpayer from doing indirectly what cannot be done directly. *Applying the GAAR turns on viewing what has actually happened*. Here the substantial Capital Loss was claimed where there was no economic loss or impoverishment."

57 *Copthorne*, supra note 2, at paragraph 70; and *Deans Knight*, supra note 3, at paragraph 63, citing *Copthorne*, ibid.

Leaving aside the non-binding commentary in the 2023 explanatory notes,[58] the new economic substance test cannot distract from the principles articulated in *Canada Trustco* and refined in *Copthorne*.[59] A lack of economic substance is merely a factor in the analysis (as it always was) and should be given weight as determined by the court (as it would in any event). In this way, abusive tax avoidance should be found only where a transaction that is significantly lacking in economic substance is determined to be abusive on the basis that it defeats the underlying rationale of the provisions that confer the tax benefit.[60]

This approach is consistent with the interpretation of GAARs in other countries—for example, the United Kingdom, India, South Africa, New Zealand, and Australia. All of these jurisdictions recognize the relevance of economic reality as a factor in identifying abuse, and do so by referring in either the applicable legislation or the jurisprudence to an economic result, business profits, pre-tax profit, or commercial substance. None of these GAARs automatically equates an absence of economic substance with abuse.[61]

Under the UK GAAR, for instance, the question of whether a tax arrangement is abusive is tested against the "relevant tax provisions": an arrangement is abusive if it cannot be reasonably regarded as a reasonable course of action *in relation to* the relevant tax provisions.[62] Similarly, the New Zealand Supreme Court has held that ascertaining when an arrangement crosses the line from a "permissible arrangement into a tax avoidance arrangement . . . should be firmly grounded in the statutory language of the provisions themselves."[63]

58 Although permissible, extrinsic aids may contain "self-serving" language that is of little assistance in the interpretive process: *Canada v. Oxford Properties Group Inc.*, 2018 FCA 30, at paragraph 93; rev'g 2016 TCC 204.

59 Helpfully, the Canada Revenue Agency (CRA) has also confirmed in CRA document no. 2024-1008251I7, February 28, 2024, that its "general view is that the conclusions reached in the examples provided in IC 88-2 and IC 88-2 Supplement 1 should remain the same under the amended section 245."

60 *Canada Trustco*, supra note 15, at paragraph 60.

61 For a detailed review of the role played by economic substance in the GAARs of other jurisdictions, see Jinyan Li, "Hallmarks of Abusive Transactions and the Role of Economic Substance: Comments on Modernizing and Strengthening the General Anti-Avoidance Rule Consultation Paper" (2022) (https://digitalcommons.osgoode.yorku.ca/all_papers/345).

62 Finance Act 2013 (UK), 2013, c. 29, part 5, subsection 207. The relevant legislation does not contain an explicit reference to "economic substance." However, in determining whether the tax arrangement in question is abusive, consideration must be given to the means of achieving the tax result sought, and reference must also be made to a non-exhaustive list of examples, all of which are focused on economic substance.

63 *Ben Nevis Forestry Ventures Ltd v. Commissioner of Inland Revenue*, [2008] NZSC 115, at paragraph 104 (footnotes omitted). The court (ibid., at paragraph 109) went on to state that the "ultimate question" in determining the applicability of New Zealand's GAAR "is whether the impugned arrangement, viewed in a commercially and economically realistic way, makes use of the specific provision in a manner that is consistent with Parliament's purpose." Like the UK legislation, the NZ legislation also does not contain an explicit reference to "economic

Considering economic substance as a free-standing requirement, by reference to a non-exhaustive list of hallmarks, and in isolation from the specific provisions at issue, does little to advance the GAAR analysis and risks turning it into a test of fiscal morality, which the Supreme Court of Canada has repeatedly warned against.[64] Economic substance cannot serve as a starting point in every analysis of misuse and abuse, without regard to whether the provisions in issue (for example, tax incentive provisions) contemplate that the disputed transactions would have any meaningful economic effect.

Taking such an approach would "impair the proper interpretation of the relevant provisions in a manner that makes substantive economic connections or the presence of a *bona fide* non-tax purpose a condition precedent to every tax benefit."[65] Instead, the goal should be to ensure that the relevant provisions are properly interpreted on the basis of their text, context, and purpose; and if the provisions themselves reveal the requisite level or amount of substance, the Crown should be required to identify precisely how the lack of economic substance frustrates the underlying rationale of those provisions.

PROVING THE ALLEGED MISUSE OR ABUSE: IMPLICATIONS FOR THE BURDEN OF PERSUASION

In theory at least, in GAAR cases, the Crown bears the burden in GAAR cases of establishing a clear misuse or abuse.[66] This position has been stated without qualification and repeatedly affirmed.[67] However, in practice, the "burden" has effectively been borne equally by the parties.[68]

substance." However, on February 3, 2023, the NZ Inland Revenue issued an interpretation statement that included a section on the relevance of the "commercial and economic reality of an arrangement." See New Zealand, Inland Revenue, *Interpretation Statement* IS23/01, "Tax Avoidance and the Interpretation of the General Anti-Avoidance Provisions Sections BG 1 and GA 1 of the Income Tax Act 2007," February 3, 2023 (www.taxtechnical.ird.govt.nz/interpretation-statements/2023/is-23-01).

64 On the role that fiscal morality may play in GAAR cases, see Hon. Donald G.H. Bowman, Deen Olsen, Wayne Adams, Al Meghji, and Wilfrid Lefebvre, "GAAR: Its Evolution and Application," in *Report of Proceedings of the Sixty-First Tax Conference*, 2009 Conference Report (Toronto: Canadian Tax Foundation, 2010), 2:1-23.

65 *Alta Energy*, supra note 7, at paragraph 47.

66 As part of the consultation paper, supra note 3, at 20, the government considered whether to reverse the onus and require taxpayers to both establish the relevant policy and demonstrate affirmatively that there was no misuse or abuse. In response to submissions made by the tax community, the decision was made not to proceed with this reform.

67 See, for example, *Alta Energy*, supra note 7, at paragraph 32; and *Oxford Properties*, supra note 58, at paragraph 113.

68 For example, in *Madison Pacific Properties Inc. v. The King*, 2023 TCC 180, at paragraph 141, the court, in finding that GAAR applied, noted that the appellant should have focused on "explaining why there was no abuse."

In *OSFC*,[69] the Federal Court of Appeal characterized the burden in terms of its practicality. As a legal matter, neither party bore the burden, since it was up to the court to answer a "question of interpretation."[70] But, from a practical perspective, the Crown was obliged to set out the relevant "policy with reference to the provisions of the Act or extrinsic aids upon which [it] relies."[71]

In *Canada Trustco*, the Supreme Court took a slightly different approach. Rather than referring to a practical burden, the court held that the Crown must identify the underlying rationale of the provisions and demonstrate that the provisions were misused or abused by reference to that rationale.[72] The court also confirmed that, for GAAR to apply, the misuse or abuse must be clear.[73]

This standard reflects the understanding that GAAR is a provision of last resort, to be applied only when the Crown can clearly demonstrate the abusive nature of the disputed transactions. In practice, however, each party is called upon to make its own affirmative case:

> As a result, it is not clear how the concept of burden would apply to a question of law. *It is simply a question of how any particular party satisfies the court regarding what the law is in a particular case*—that is, regarding the object, spirit, and purpose of the relevant provision.[74]

The proposition that the misuse and abuse analysis is an entirely legal matter, and that the Crown merely carries a burden of persuasion—as either party would in a non-GAAR case—is conceptually problematic. If a taxpayer is to be taxed by reference to an unwritten rule or some rationale left unexpressed in legislative text, the Crown should be required to express and substantiate the basis for its position and to do so well in advance of trial.[75] If the Crown particularizes its assertions of abuse

69 *OSFC Holdings Ltd. v. Canada*, 2001 FCA 260.

70 Ibid., at paragraph 68.

71 Ibid.

72 *Canada Trustco*, supra note 15, at paragraph 69. Lower courts have also characterized the burden on the Crown as a "burden of persuasion." See *Evans v. The Queen*, 2005 TCC 684, at paragraph 35.

73 *Canada Trustco*, supra note 15, at paragraphs 50 and 69; *Copthorne*, supra note 2, at paragraph 72; *Alta Energy*, supra note 7, at paragraph 33; and *Deans Knight*, supra note 3, at paragraph 69.

74 Hon. Wyman Webb, Hon. Lucie Lamarre, Hon. David Graham, Pooja Mihailovich, Michelle Moriartey, and Matthew Turnell, "Judges' Panel," in *Report of Proceedings of the Seventieth Tax Conference*, 2018 Conference Report (Toronto: Canadian Tax Foundation, 2019), 2:1-25, at 2:20 (emphasis added), per Webb JA.

75 See, for example, *Lark Investments Inc. v. The King*, 2024 TCC 30, at paragraph 57, per St-Hilaire J: "At the risk of repeating myself, I would say that the interested reader should not have to trace their own path between the factual underpinnings and [other portions of the reply] to know exactly what the Respondent's position is as to why there is abuse or misuse in this case." In disposing of the motion in issue, the court struck a portion of the reply, with leave to amend, on the basis that it could prejudice the fair hearing of the appeal and was an abuse

for the first time in oral argument, the taxpayer is left with a limited opportunity in advance of trial to truly appreciate the case against it, and insufficient time at trial to marshal a sufficiently robust response. The difficulty with this approach is also compounded by the fact that, as discussed further below, a taxpayer may now be penalized if GAAR is found to apply.

As the Supreme Court has observed, *evidence* concerning the purpose of a provision (that is, Parliament's intent at the time of enactment) is necessary to enable the court to determine what Parliament was trying to achieve.[76] In a GAAR case, it is the Crown, forming part of the corpus of the state, that has comparatively more knowledge of the relevant statutory scheme and should be in a better position to establish, as an evidentiary matter, what is intended.

Taxpayers are tasked with familiarizing themselves with the detailed rules in the Act and filing a return on a basis that complies with those rules. In a GAAR case, the Crown's task is to explain why, and how, strict compliance with the rules is insufficient to allow the consequences mandated by them. To effectively put the taxpayer to the task of both making the Crown's case and defending against it is antithetical to the rule of law, the self-reporting nature of the tax regime, and the adversarial system.

Given the serious reputational consequences that flow from litigating a GAAR assessment, and the potential monetary implications of both the assessment itself and the associated penalty, the Crown should be held to its burden in real terms, and the courts should be reluctant to make any finding of abuse without a sound evidentiary foundation for doing so.[77]

MAKING IT CLEAR: IMPACT OF A PENALTY ON THE THRESHOLD FOR A FINDING OF MISUSE OR ABUSE

Under the amended GAAR, a substantial monetary penalty may be assessed where GAAR is held to apply.[78] The introduction of a penalty is a significant shift in the

---

of process. The court emphasized that the Crown "must state the reasons they intend to rely on as required by paragraph 49(1)(h) of the [Tax Court] Rules. They did not, at least certainly not clearly and without the Appellant having to forge its own path to get there." Ibid., at paragraph 60.

76 *Canada v. Loblaw Financial Holdings Inc.*, 2021 SCC 51, at paragraph 54.

77 On this point, it has also been suggested that the government should improve the communication of its legislative and regulatory objectives so that courts can better understand the circumstances that led to the enactment of particular tax provisions. See, for example, Steve Suarez, "GAAR Two Years Later" (2024) 5:1 *Perspectives on Tax Law & Policy* 4-6; and Pooja Mihailovich, "Words Matter: The Limits of Purposive Interpretation," in Pooja Mihailovich and John Sorensen, eds., *Tax Disputes in Canada: The Path Forward* (Toronto: Canadian Tax Foundation, 2022), 1:1-32, at 1:28-29.

78 Bill C-59, supra note 4, section 66(4). The penalty is 25 percent of the tax benefit denied. It can be avoided if the taxpayer voluntarily discloses the transactions in advance. A taxpayer may also be able to avoid the new penalty under a token "due diligence" exception if it can demonstrate

operation of GAAR. It was previously well understood that GAAR was not a penal provision and that taxpayers could not self-assess under GAAR. Given the potential for a penalty, the question arises: What impact will this have on the threshold for finding that there has been a misuse or abuse?

In applying GAAR, it is taken for granted that both the underlying rationale of the provisions in issue and the alleged abuse must be clear. In practice, however, there remain vastly different approaches to determining whether these tests have been met in any given case.

In determining whether the alleged rationale exists, courts have relied on various extrinsic aids, but without any measurable degree of consistency or clear direction as to the weight that should be given to the different aids. Materials offered in evidence have included judicial statements, Hansard, ministerial or departmental statements, explanatory notes, texts, and periodicals.[79] In some cases, courts have found clear abuse primarily by relying on academic literature and an analysis of the provision itself.[80] In other cases, the Crown has failed to meet this burden without offering the court more.[81]

The current diversity in approach has led to uncertainty in the degree to which courts at various levels have required the Crown to discharge its burden. This uncertainty is particularly noticeable where trial decisions finding no clear abuse have been overturned on appeal or where there is a dissenting opinion from an appellate court on whether there has been misuse or abuse. If the abuse must be clear, any decision in which abuse has been found should rarely be overturned on appeal or result in a dissent.

Also, in considering whether the Crown has met its burden, a court should be guided by a consistent standard. One such standard is followed, for example, by the Department of Finance in proposing retroactive clarifying changes, namely, where

---

that the transaction was, at the time it was undertaken, "identical or almost identical" to a transaction that was the subject of administrative guidance, government statements, or court decisions. The purpose and utility of this exception are questionable, since it is highly unlikely that GAAR, and thus the penalty, would have applied to such transactions in any event. The 2023 explanatory notes, supra note 30, at 340, also state that this exception is not meant to replace any other defences that may be available. This position is consistent with jurisprudence that establishes that taxpayers are entitled to assert a due diligence defence, whether or not there is language permitting such a defence: *Corporation de l'École Polytechnique v. Canada*, 2004 FCA 127, at paragraphs 27 and 28; and *Home Depot of Canada Inc. v. The Queen*, 2009 TCC 281, at paragraphs 12 and 13.

79 *Canada Trustco*, supra note 15, at paragraph 55. See also, for example, *Lehigh Cement*, supra note 22, at paragraph 32; and *Deans Knight*, supra note 3, at paragraph 104, where the majority relied on the observations of a politician to ground its conclusion regarding abuse.

80 See, for example, *Loblaw Financial*, supra note 76.

81 See, for example, *Global Equity Fund Ltd. v. The Queen*, 2011 TCC 507; rev'd 2012 FCA 272 (because the Crown alleged on appeal that different provisions had been abused and raised new arguments).

the existing policy can be "easily deduced" from the provision or is "well-known and understood" by taxpayers:

> Retroactive clarifying changes may also be appropriate to counteract a literal interpretation of a legislative provision that would produce a result that is clearly contrary to the underlying policy. *This should only be the case, however, to the extent that the policy can be easily deduced from the relevant provisions or where it may reasonably be considered that the policy is well-known and understood by the taxpayers.* Where this is the case, the taxpayers should not legitimately expect to obtain the benefits of an interpretation that would run contrary to the policy.[82]

Given the judicial experience to date, this may be viewed as a lofty goal in the GAAR context. But, just as a provision may be amended retroactively to give effect to its existing policy only if the amendment is intended to clarify rather than alter that policy, it is arguable that GAAR should be invoked to override the tax consequences of a provision only if the underlying rationale of that provision is palpably evident. This is particularly the case following the enactment of the amendments, given the potential for a substantial penalty if GAAR is held to apply.

The situations in which penalties are applied typically involve objective facts and actions that are within the taxpayer's control. By contrast, at the heart of any GAAR case is a debate about the underlying rationale of complex statutory schemes. As the consultation paper recognizes, the Crown itself has struggled to clearly establish the underlying rationale of relevant provisions in many instances.[83] This struggle is borne out in the jurisprudence: in some cases, the Tax Court has found there to be no clear underlying rationale or abuse, while the Federal Court of Appeal has come to the opposite conclusion on both points.[84]

The application of GAAR can often amount to an exercise in which reasonable minds may differ with respect to the outcome. It is questionable whether there is any place for a penalty in such cases—although, admittedly, the penalty provision is likely animated by the hope that it will realign taxpayer risks and incentives. Be that as it may, the very potential for a penalty should cause courts to apply greater consistency in the approach to the determination of misuse or abuse, and to insist on a high standard for finding clear abuse.

---

82 Canada, Department of Finance, *Comprehensive Response of the Government of Canada to the Seventh Report of the Standing Committee on Public Accounts* (Ottawa: Department of Finance, September 1995), at 16 (emphasis added).

83 The consultation paper, supra note 3, at 15.

84 For example, in *Oxford Properties*, supra note 58, the Tax Court found that none of the three provisions at issue had been misused or abused, and the Federal Court of Appeal found that all three provisions had been abused. This was the first GAAR case in which the Tax Court concluded that the Crown had not provided clear support for its assertions of unexpressed legislative policy and the Federal Court of Appeal found otherwise.

For instance, in *Lehigh Cement*, the Federal Court of Appeal chastised the Crown for advancing a position that was not grounded in the Act or the jurisprudence, but was "an echo of a sentence in the budget paper released by the Department of Finance."[85] In that case, the Crown cited numerous articles that discussed the scope of the provision, but the court found that those publications said nothing about the policy underlying the enactment of the provision, except to repeat what the budget paper had said. In the court's view, this evidence was a "shaky foundation" for a GAAR assessment.[86]

It is evident that perceptions of legislative intent can differ markedly from person to person and from court to court. It follows that the question should not be what a tax official or, for that matter, a judge ascertains the underlying rationale to be years after the fact. The proper perspective is that of the time when the relevant transactions were undertaken. Moreover, the underlying rationale must have been objectively ascertainable at that time and sufficiently clear for the taxpayer to appreciate.

CONCLUDING OBSERVATIONS

The Supreme Court of Canada has consistently recognized that, absent a clear framework for the principled application of GAAR and a high threshold for demonstrating misuse or abuse, GAAR could devolve into a discretionary provision, undermining the certainty that must underpin the proper functioning of the tax system.

Taxpayers need to understand at the time of undertaking transactions whether, and in what circumstances, the minister may deny the associated tax benefits. This is not an unrealistic expectation, particularly given that a GAAR assessment can now result in a substantial penalty. Moreover, if taxpayers may now be penalized for failing to land on the right side of a debate that routinely confounds the courts,[87] it behooves the minister to detail in precise terms both the underlying rationale in issue and the basis for alleging misuse and abuse. The courts, in turn, must conduct a thoroughly objective and analytically robust examination, and apply a consistent and clearly defined standard against which any alleged misuse or abuse must be measured.

GAAR is intended to be a backstop for the minister where Parliament has failed to legislate explicitly or to be sufficiently precise in formulating legislative text. With the addition of a penalty and the lowering of various thresholds in the different steps of the GAAR analysis, GAAR will continue to serve as a deterrent to taxpayers who may otherwise undertake planning that is viewed as aggressive. Nevertheless, courts should continue to exercise restraint in applying this provision, lest the basis for its application devolve into a social fairness analysis that is neither rigorous nor principled.

85 *Lehigh Cement*, supra note 22, at paragraph 32.

86 Ibid., at paragraph 35.

87 As the consultation paper, supra note 3, at 17, acknowledges, "the interpretive process is a difficult one for taxpayers, advisors, the CRA and the courts."

canadian tax journal / revue fiscale canadienne (2024) 72:3, 617-33
https://doi.org/10.32721/ctj.2024.72.3.pf.krever

Policy Forum: Rethinking GAAR—Back to Basics

Richard Krever*

PRÉCIS

À première vue, les récentes modifications de la règle générale anti-évitement (RGAE) du Canada ont pour effet d'élargir la portée de cette dernière afin de la rendre applicable à un plus grand nombre de stratégies d'atténuation fiscale. Toutefois, des développements survenus en Australie, où est née la RGAE moderne, et la jurisprudence canadienne donnent à penser que l'incidence des modifications pourrait être limitée. Plus particulièrement, l'extension de la RGAE aux conventions dont l'atténuation fiscale n'est pas nécessairement l'objectif premier de l'opération, mais seulement l'un des principaux objets, pourrait s'avérer impraticable. En définitive, l'objet d'une opération est un facteur subjectif, peu importe les indicateurs objectifs considérés, et le contribuable est la seule personne capable d'évaluer l'objet véritable d'une convention. Il va également de soi que l'atténuation fiscale n'est l'objectif que de certaines étapes d'une convention commerciale, et si le contribuable peut remplacer l'investigation des opérations en litige par la convention commerciale élargie — vente d'un actif, emprunt, etc. — le principal objet sera presque toujours un objectif commercial légitime.

Surtout, un examen de la jurisprudence australienne et canadienne montre que les tribunaux font invariablement une distinction entre les conventions qui sont implicitement approuvées par le législateur et celles qui s'écartent clairement des possibilités envisagées par le Parlement, ne permettant l'application de la RGAE qu'à ces dernières. Par exemple, si le législateur et les autorités fiscales permettent aux contribuables de traiter des contrats de location-financement comme des contrats de location-exploitation, les tribunaux n'autorisent pas les autorités fiscales à utiliser la RGAE pour arrêter une exploitation déraisonnable du mythe légal. Si le législateur offre des crédits d'imputation sur les dividendes et que des contribuables structurent leur financement pour profiter de cet avantage, les tribunaux n'interviennent pas pour y restreindre l'accès lorsque le législateur n'a pas imposé de limites prescrites par la loi. À l'inverse, si le législateur a établi des règles claires et sans équivoque sur le transfert de pertes, les tribunaux autorisent les autorités fiscales à utiliser la RGAE pour rejeter les conventions qui cherchent à contourner ces règles.

* Of the Law School, University of Western Australia (e-mail: rkrever@gmail.com).

L'expérience montre que les tribunaux sont fortement disposés à autoriser l'utilisation de la RGAE comme rempart contre les cas où des contribuables élaborent des structures qui abusent, par l'intermédiaire de conventions sophistiquées, de concessions de la loi dans le but d'étendre ces concessions bien au-delà des conventions auxquelles elles étaient destinées. Toutefois, les tribunaux n'autorisent pas le gouvernement à utiliser la RGAE comme une arme pour étendre, grâce à des failles ou des erreurs de la loi, une obligation fiscale aux conventions qui sont clairement exclues. Le message des tribunaux est sans équivoque : si la loi ou un traité contient une erreur, celle-ci doit être corrigée au moyen d'une modification et non grâce à la RGAE.

En résumé, l'apparente refonte de la RGAE canadienne pourrait ne s'avérer qu'une tempête dans un verre d'eau et avoir une incidence faible, voire inexistante, sur l'issue des litiges.

ABSTRACT

Recent changes to Canada's general anti-avoidance rule (GAAR) on their face broaden the scope of GAAR, making it applicable to more tax-minimization schemes. However, developments in Australia, home of the modern GAAR, and case law in Canada suggest that the impact of the changes may be limited. In particular, the extension of GAAR to arrangements where tax minimization is not necessarily the primary objective of the transaction but merely one of the main purposes may prove to be unworkable. The purpose of a transaction is ultimately a subjective factor, whatever objective indicators are considered, and the only person able to assert the true purpose of an arrangement is the taxpayer. Equally obvious is the reality that tax minimization is the goal of only some steps in a commercial arrangement, and if the taxpayer can replace the investigation of the impugned transactions with the broader commercial arrangement—sell an asset, borrow money, and so forth—the main purpose will almost always be a legitimate commercial goal.

More significantly, an examination of Australian and Canadian case law reveals that the courts consistently make a distinction between arrangements that are implicitly endorsed by the legislature and those that clearly fall outside possibilities contemplated by Parliament, allowing GAAR to apply only in the latter cases. For example, if the legislature and tax authorities allow taxpayers to treat finance leases as operating leases, the courts will not permit tax authorities to use GAAR to stop an egregious exploitation of the legal myth. If the legislature provides imputation credits for dividends and taxpayers structure financing to enjoy the benefit, the courts will not step in to restrict access where the legislature has not imposed statutory limits. Conversely, if the legislature has set out clear and unambiguous rules on when losses can be transferred, courts will allow tax authorities to use GAAR to strike down arrangements seeking to bypass those rules.

Experience shows the courts are quite willing to allow the use of GAAR as a shield where taxpayers devise schemes that abuse concessions in the law through contrived arrangements that seek to extend the concessions to arrangements far from those for which the concessions were intended. The courts will not, however, allow the government to use GAAR as a sword to extend tax liability to arrangements that are clearly excluded through gaps or errors in the law. The message from the courts is unambiguous: if a mistake was made in the law or a treaty, it should be fixed by way of amendment, not GAAR.

In short, the apparent overhaul of the Canadian GAAR may prove to be little more than a tempest in a teacup with little and perhaps no impact on dispute outcomes.

KEYWORDS: GAAR ■ STATUTORY INTERPRETATION ■ PURPOSE ■ AVOIDANCE

CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION

More often than not, speed is of the essence as the government of the day tables tax legislation in Parliament to quickly close an exposed loophole, grant a politically opportune concession, or pursue economic or social-planning objectives with what it hopes are sufficiently targeted tax expenditures. The generous consultation and discussion period provided for proposals for reform of Canada's general anti-avoidance rule (GAAR) has offered a useful and rare opportunity to consider the fundamental elements of the rule and what the amendments can accomplish.

While GAARs have a history dating back to the 19th century,[1] modern "Anglo" GAARs are relatively recent phenomena, beginning with New Zealand's GAAR in 1974 and the modern Australian GAAR in 1980 (replacing one that had been in place since the adoption of income taxation at the federal level in 1915), which in turn influenced the design of the subsequent Canadian GAAR in 1988, the replacement South African GAAR in 2006, and finally the United Kingdom's GAAR in 2013.[2] Tax authorities in all jurisdictions generally welcomed the adoption of a new and seemingly more rigorous GAAR that could be, and no doubt is, invoked in almost all disputes as a threat and a negotiating tool. However, the various measures have generated relatively little case law, considering their potential reach. Only seven disputes considering the GAAR's application to avoidance arrangements have reached the highest court in Australia since the adoption more than 40 years ago of the world's most comprehensive and detailed general anti-avoidance provision that influenced the design of almost all subsequently enacted GAARs.[3]

1 Craig Elliffe, "New Zealand's General Anti-Avoidance Rule—A Triumph of Flexibility over Certainty" (2014) 62:1 *Canadian Tax Journal* 147-64.

2 The Australian, NZ, Canadian, and UK GAARs are compared in John Gaetano Tretola, "Trending Towards Convergence" (2020) 15:1 *Journal of the Australasian Tax Teachers Association* 40-66.

3 An eighth case, *Deputy Commissioner of Taxation v. Richard Walter Pty Ltd* (1995), 183 CLR 168, considered the interaction of GAAR assessments and other procedural rules, but not the substantive reach of Australia's GAAR.

The concerns of taxpayers, tax practitioners, and tax scholars over the role of a GAAR are well documented.[4] A GAAR applies in an arbitrary and unfair manner, affecting only those taxpayers that are identified in an audit, while all others that have engaged previously in similar arrangements escape the application of the rule. A GAAR encourages further tax-avoidance arrangements by providing signposts for the factors that will bring a particular arrangement within the scope of the measure or help it to escape the application of the rule. Finally, and most significantly, the crucial trigger for the application of a GAAR to a tax-effective transaction is a wholly subjective factor ultimately known only to the taxpayer—the taxpayer's subjective purpose for engaging in the transaction. Until the recent enactment of Canada's GAAR amendments,[5] the Canada Revenue Agency (CRA)—like its counterparts in other jurisdictions—could replace the tax liability from the arrangement that was used with the tax liability that would have followed from a hypothetical transaction that was not used only if tax avoidance accounted for more than 50 percent of the purposes for adopting the transaction that was used. The amendments change this test to apply GAAR if tax avoidance was "one of the main purposes" of an arrangement. The possible implications of this change are discussed further below.

GAARs are not new, and there is a wealth of case law in common-law jurisdictions that can provide some clues as to how courts draw the line between acceptable and unacceptable tax planning. An examination of key decisions in Canada and Australia suggests that taxpayers and their advisers may be looking in the wrong direction for the purpose that matters when determining whether GAAR may deny a tax benefit resulting from a tax-effective transaction. Instead of focusing on the subjective intention of the taxpayer engaging in the transaction, they should perhaps consider the legislature's intention in providing alternative tax outcomes for complex arrangements undertaken for legitimate commercial reasons.

In every case of tax avoidance, as opposed to tax evasion, the taxpayer followed a legal path that the legislature intended to be available in some circumstances and not others. The real question considered by the courts might be whether Parliament intended to make the option used by the taxpayer available in the circumstances of the taxpayer's arrangements. None of the amendments to Canada's GAAR will affect this process, nor are they likely to have more than an insignificant impact on the potential application of the provision.

---

4 These are summarized in Richard Krever, "General Report: GAARs," in Michael Lang, Jeffrey Owens, Pasquale Pistone, Alexander Rust, Josef Schuch, and Claus Staringer, eds., *GAARs—A Key Element of Tax Systems in the Post-BEPS World* (Amsterdam: International Bureau of Fiscal Documentation, 2016), 1-20.

5 The GAAR amendments were incorporated into the Income Tax Act (RSC 1985, c. 1 (5th Supp.), as amended) by the passage of Bill C-59, An Act To Implement Certain Provisions of the Fall Economic Statement Tabled in Parliament on November 21, 2023 and Certain Provisions of the Budget Tabled in Parliament on March 28, 2023, enacted by SC 2024, c. 15; royal assent June 20, 2024.

TAX LIABILITIES BASED ON SUBJECTIVE INTENT?

A general *anti-avoidance* rule, as the name signifies, is intended to counter tax avoidance. It does so by substituting for the tax liability imposed on a taxpayer as a consequence of an arrangement subject to GAAR a (higher) tax liability based on a hypothetical transaction (or series of transactions) that the taxpayer could have undertaken instead of the arrangement actually used. Whether GAAR will apply or not turns, as noted, on the taxpayer's purpose in adopting the path disputed by the tax authority.

In many tax systems, it would strike observers as odd that tax liability should depend on the purpose of a taxpayer when entering into a transaction. Observers in jurisdictions that equate the rule of law with objective rules and clearly established legal boundaries might balk at a system where liability could be based on a taxpayer's subjective intent, but this odd approach to defining the tax base is a fundamental feature of the Canadian tax system and, for that matter, almost all Anglo tax regimes apart from that of the United States.[6] For example, in the early days of income tax jurisprudence, American courts concluded that the term "income" had a simple objective meaning—a realized increase in wealth—thus catching gains of all sorts, from true happenstance windfalls to ordinary returns for investment, business, or labour. In contrast, Anglo courts outside the United States adopted the UK interpretation of "income" in tax law, concluding that the legislature intended the term to have the same meaning that it had in pre-income-tax trust law, describing the gains that would be distributed to life or income beneficiaries as opposed to those to which remainder or capital beneficiaries were entitled.

The interpretive technique of borrowing the meanings of terms in tax law from their meanings in other, and older, fields of law (famously labelled the "fallacy of the transplanted doctrine" by Neil Brooks)[7] is, of course, not limited to the definition of income. For example, the common-law test for determining whether the provider of labour services is an "employee" for income tax purposes is lifted directly from much earlier vicarious liability law. But unique to the judicial concept of "income" is the role of the taxpayer's subjective state of mind in determining the character of gains. The trust-law tests used to identify income gains transposed to the income tax are based on both features of amounts received (anticipated and

6 While all Anglo jurisdictions have adopted the UK common-law system, there is a distinction between the United States, which developed its own interpretation techniques and definitions of tax-law concepts, and other Anglo jurisdictions that followed UK interpretation doctrines and definitions developed by UK courts based on the UK tax-law statutes because of both deference toward UK courts and the fact that the Privy Council was the final court of appeal for former colonies, apart from the United States, long after independence. (The final Privy Council decision on Canadian law was rendered in 1959.)

7 Neil Brooks, "The Responsibility of Judges in Interpreting Tax Legislation," in Graeme S. Cooper, ed., *Tax Avoidance and the Rule of Law* (Amsterdam and Sydney: International Bureau of Fiscal Documentation and Australian Tax Research Foundation, 1997), 93-129, at 122.

periodic) and the taxpayer's purpose in acquiring property or entering into an arrangement. Under Canada's tax system, if property were acquired as an investment to generate current income, the gain realized on its disposal would be a capital gain, completely free of income tax prior to 1972 and partially exempt since that time. If, on the other hand, property were acquired as inventory or for the purpose of resale at a profit or for use in an adventure in the nature of trade, the same gain on disposition of the property would be an income gain.

A tax-avoidance *purpose* threshold is common to all Anglo GAARs. The UK and Scottish GAARs characterize an arrangement as an unacceptable tax-avoidance transaction if one of the "main" purposes of the transaction is to reduce a tax liability.[8] The South African GAAR uses a "sole or main purpose" test.[9] The previous version of the Canadian GAAR had a similar threshold, characterizing an arrangement as a prohibited tax-avoidance transaction if it was not done "primarily" for reasons other than to reduce a tax liability.[10] Similarly, the Australian legislation refers to the "dominant" purpose of the arrangement.[11] New Zealand's GAAR appears to have a lower threshold: a tax-avoidance purpose that is greater than "merely incidental" to the purposes of the transaction.[12] Also, it refers to either the purpose or the "effect" of the transaction. An alternative "effect" test is also found in the GAAR included in Australia's goods and services tax (GST) statute.[13]

The new Canadian test to identify transactions subject to GAAR—transactions in which tax avoidance is "one of the main purposes"[14]—is unique and, on its face, unworkable. In all constructions creating a tax-avoidance purpose cutoff for the operation of GAAR, the implied threshold for terms such as "main," "dominant," or "primary" is a purpose greater than 50 percent of all the purposes. By definition, a collection of purposes can at best have only one main purpose. There is, however, precedent for an alternative interpretation for the phrase in tax law, one that equates "main" with "more important than some others," as is the case in phrases such as "a main road." According to this interpretation, "one of the main purposes" is understood to mean one of a number of purposes that are more important than other (perhaps many other) purposes.[15]

8 Finance Act 2013 (UK), 2013, c. 29, section 207; Revenue Scotland and Tax Powers Act 2014, section 63.

9 South Africa, Income Tax Act 1962, section 80A.

10 Subsection 245(3) of the Income Tax Act, supra note 5, as it read prior to the enactment of the amendments.

11 Australia, Income Tax Assessment Act 1936, No. 27, 1936, section 177A(5).

12 New Zealand, Income Tax Act 2007, 2007 No. 97, section YA1, definition of "tax avoidance arrangement."

13 Australia, A New Tax System (Goods and Services Tax) Act 1999, section 165-5.

14 Subsection 245(3) of the Income Tax Act as amended by Bill C-59, supra note 5.

15 *Groupe Honco Inc. v. Canada*, 2013 FCA 128.

This interpretation will validate the technical construction of the new measure but does not address a broader conceptual issue: How narrow can an arrangement be considered to be when evaluating the main purposes of the transaction? The same issue arises in respect of a tax-avoidance effect test. On its face, an objective effect threshold appears to offer advantages over a less certain subjective purpose threshold ultimately based on aims known only to the taxpayer, even if the legislators indicate what sort of factors can be considered when evaluating the taxpayer's purpose.[16] Tax administrators, at least, should appreciate the certainty of an objective tax, though taxpayers may see advantages in a game in which they hold all the subjective cards.

In practice, however, the desired certainty of an objective tax-avoidance effect test can prove to be little more than a chimera in the mind of the legislative drafter. Taxpayers enter into tax-avoidance arrangements to minimize the tax liability resulting from a commercial transaction. In terms of the broader arrangement, the effect (and main purpose) of any tax-avoidance arrangement is attainment of a legitimate commercial objective, not a tax objective. The tax aspect of the arrangement is limited to the secondary goal of maximizing after-tax returns or minimizing after-tax expenses in the commercial transaction.

Thus, taking examples from Canadian case law, the ultimate purpose of the taxpayer in *Canada Trustco*[17] was to borrow money from a lender and pay the lowest interest rate available. The taxpayer in *Copthorne Holdings*[18] wished to consolidate lower-tier companies and recover funds that could be better invested elsewhere. The respective taxpayers in *Deans Knight*[19] and *MacKay*[20] wanted to sell loss-making subsidiaries for the highest price possible. The taxpayer in *Lipson*[21] wanted to borrow money from a bank to buy a house. If GAAR were triggered by a tax-minimization purpose, almost every GAAR case would fail the test provided that the taxpayer was allowed to present the impugned arrangement as the actual commercial transaction from beginning to end. The same is true of a main effect test. Like the purpose test, the effect test can be applied in favour of the tax authority only if the arrangement is dissected into its separate steps, and the test is applied to the intermediary steps that have no explanation other than the minimization of tax in the larger commercial transaction.

Will the shift to a "one of the main purposes" test be effective to overcome the overall purpose conundrum where the arrangement, taken as a whole, is intended to achieve an observable commercial objective? It may not. There is no doubt that

16 The Australian GAAR, for example, provides an extensive list of factors that can be considered when determining whether the provision applies to a transaction; see Income Tax Assessment Act 1936, supra note 10, section 177D.

17 *Canada Trustco Mortgage Co. v. Canada*, 2005 SCC 54.

18 *Copthorne Holdings Ltd. v. Canada*, 2011 SCC 63.

19 *Deans Knight Income Corp. v. Canada*, 2023 SCC 16.

20 *Canada v. MacKay*, 2008 FCA 105.

21 *Lipson v. Canada*, 2009 SCC 1.

the test eases the task of tax authorities in satisfying the GAAR requirements if the inquiry can be narrowed to the intermediary steps used to minimize tax en route to the larger commercial objective. The tax-minimization manoeuvres incorporated into the intermediary steps will not be considered, however, if the taxpayer is able to shift the focus to the purpose of the overall transaction. At the end of the day, whether a court chooses to consider intermediary or ultimate objectives may turn, not on the taxpayer's purpose, but rather on an unstated factor, the legislature's intention.

WHOSE PURPOSE MATTERS: THE TAXPAYER'S OR THE LEGISLATURE'S?

Crucial to an understanding of the judicial reasoning process is an appreciation of the tax-law feature that underlies all tax-minimization arrangements: tax legislation that offers taxpayers a number of options for different tax treatments of different legal arrangements that yield identical economic outcomes. Common to cases in which the courts approve arrangements as acceptable tax-planning exercises and cases in which the arrangements fall afoul of GAAR are different options in the tax legislation that attract different tax burdens. If both acceptable and non-acceptable arrangements reflect taxpayers' deliberate choices of lower-tax options, can it really be the taxpayer's purpose that triggers the application of GAAR?

Consideration of the key decisions in Canada and Australia (the home of the modern GAAR) suggests that taxpayers and their advisers may be looking in the wrong direction for the purpose that really matters when determining whether GAAR will permit a reconstruction of a tax-effective transaction for tax purposes. Rather than searching out the subjective intention of the person orchestrating the transaction (the nominal test set out in the law), they may be better advised to look to Parliament's purpose in providing alternative tax outcomes for complex multi-step arrangements that are intended to achieve legitimate commercial ends. Without exception, in cases involving tax avoidance (as opposed to tax evasion), the taxpayer chose a legal option that the legislators intended to be available in some circumstances and not others. The proper question to be considered by the courts might be whether Parliament intended to make the option used by the taxpayer one that could be available in the circumstances of the taxpayer's arrangements.

Parliamentary intent can be explicitly stated through boundaries set out in the law or implied through non-action in response to interpretations followed by the courts or the tax authority. The taxpayer in *Copthorne Holdings*[22] failed in its endeavour to avoid GAAR when it was shown that Parliament had adopted specific anti-avoidance measures to limit the circumstances in which funds could be withdrawn from a company free of tax. Unlike the corporate tax provisions in some jurisdictions, Canada's Income Tax Act[23] provides no ordering rules to characterize company distributions

22 Supra note 18.

23 Income Tax Act, supra note 5.

as taxable distributions of retained profits or tax-free returns of after-tax contributions to paid-up capital. The Act does, however, have rules that seek to establish strict boundaries to what can constitute paid-up capital, and it could be shown that the taxpayer's arrangements in *Copthorne Holdings* were intended to circumvent those rules and bypass parliamentary intent. The Supreme Court of Canada, not surprisingly, applied GAAR to cancel the taxpayer's attempt to make double use of the same paid-up capital.

The taxpayers in *Deans Knight*[24] and *MacKay*[25] were unsuccessful for similar reasons. Parliament has enacted measures to allow the use by profitable businesses of tax losses transferred by way of a sale of a loss company in limited and defined circumstances. The owners of loss companies and prospective purchasers, including the taxpayers in *Deans Knight* and *MacKay*, entered into a series of transactions intended to circumvent the bright lines set by the legislature and provide the taxpayers with an opportunity to utilize the transferred losses in a transaction that fell outside the scope of legislatively acceptable transfers. Unsurprisingly, the courts were sympathetic to the government's argument that the transfers fell afoul of GAAR.

There are a number of Australian cases that illustrate a similar approach to the application of GAAR outside Canada when courts face contrived and artificial arrangements adopted in an attempt by taxpayers to shift an arrangement that would be subject to less generous tax treatment to one that notionally appears to qualify for preferential treatment offered by the legislature through alternative tax rules.

One example is the decision of the Australian High Court (Australia's final court of appeal) in *Spotless*.[26] This case involved a taxpayer that had entered into a series of transactions to route a deposit into an Australian bank through a foreign tax haven to take advantage of an exemption then in place for foreign-source income. Long before the case reached the High Court (where the Australian Taxation Office [ATO] succeeded using GAAR), the government had realized that the foreign-source income system was not sustainable, and the exemption regime had been replaced with a conventional foreign tax credit system. However, at the time of the transaction in dispute, the legislation provided two clear alternatives: an investment in Australia would yield taxable income, and an investment abroad subject to the lowest foreign withholding tax would yield income exempt from Australian taxation. Indeed, it is likely that a better-planned arrangement would have been successful, but the blatant round-tripping in the case, as the funds quickly moved from the tax haven and were fully secured by a deposit by the scheme organizers in a large Australian bank in Sydney, ultimately proved fatal to the taxpayer. The audacity of the scheme alone likely triggered the decision in favour of the ATO.

24 Supra note 19.

25 Supra note 20.

26 *Federal Commissioner of Taxation v. Spotless Services Ltd.* (1996), 186 CLR 404.

The High Court applied a similar approach in its decision in *Peabody*,[27] a case in which the contrived nature of the arrangements would have torpedoed the tax scheme but for a fatal mistake by the ATO. The taxpayer in *Peabody* floated a very successful private company on the stock exchange. The taxpayer had acquired its initial tranche of shares long before the float, but most of the shares that it held had been acquired within a year of the float. At the time, short-term capital gains (realized on property acquired within a year of disposition) were fully taxed, and long-term capital gains were exempt from tax. Prior to the float, the taxpayer arranged for the company to alter the rights attached to the newly acquired shares so that all of their value was transferred to the shares that had been held for many years, shifting the taxable capital gains that would have been realized on the sale of the new shares to the tax-exempt gains realized on the sale of the old shares.

As it turned out, the taxpayer was successful in its bid to dispute the application of GAAR, not because it was able to show that the tax-avoidance scheme fell outside the reach of GAAR, but rather because the ATO was unable to show that it had assessed the correct person in its reconstruction. The shares were held through a discretionary trust, and the ATO attributed the gains to one of the potential beneficiaries under the trust deed. The court concluded that there was no certainty that the gain would go to that person if the transaction were unwound and reconstructed so that the sale by the discretionary trust generated taxable gains. But for the ATO's choice of taxpayer to assess, it seems clear that the court would have concluded that the arrangement had been defeated by GAAR, since the legislature had drawn a clear distinction between the tax treatment of short-term capital gains and the tax treatment of long-term capital gains, and the gains in this case were attributable solely to the increase in value of recently acquired assets. The decision prompted a change to the capital gains tax rules so that value shifts are now treated as a capital gains realization event.

A third Australian example of a case in which the artificial and contrived nature of the arrangements led the court to reject the taxpayer's attempt to achieve a preferential tax treatment seemingly permitted by the law is the High Court decision in *Hart*.[28] That case involved a taxpayer and his spouse who sought a mortgage loan to purchase a new house but wanted to retain their existing house as an investment property. They entered into an arrangement marketed by a bank as a "wealth optimizer" loan—essentially, two loans bundled together, with the equity in one property allowing for a much more leveraged loan on the other property. The arrangement provided for a loan on what became the investment property equal to much of its market value and a far less leveraged loan secured on the new family home. Under the wealth optimizer contract, the investment property loan was structured as an interest-only loan that provided for interest payments to be capitalized and added to the principal so long as the bank's security in the couple's new residential property

27 *Federal Commissioner of Taxation v. Peabody* (1994), 181 CLR 359.

28 *Federal Commissioner of Taxation v. Hart* (2004), 217 CLR 216.

grew through their gradual repayment of that loan. All payments to the bank were accordingly directed to the home loan.

The alternative to the impugned arrangement would have been for the taxpayer to take separate loans for the investment property and the family home, with the investment loan being extremely highly leveraged, with interest payments only and with interest being compoundable over an extremely long period. Crucial to the decisions of the first instance court, the appeal court, and the High Court was the finding that the taxpayer could not have found a loan with such favourable conditions outside the tied-loan arrangement marketed by the bank. In other words, but for the arrangement that shifted much of the interest on the borrowed funds to the investment loan, the taxpayer would have held an investment loan with much lower deductible interest payments and a home loan with much higher non-deductible interest payments. Had a commercially valid arrangement been available that offered similar tax benefits, all three courts would likely have found that GAAR had no application to the taxpayer's arrangement. GAAR applied because of the artificiality of the arrangement: apart from the tax benefit provided by the arrangement, there would have been no rationale for the tied loans, and no financial institution would have offered the investment loan on these terms without the security of the home loan.

The fact situation in *Hart* bears a resemblance to that in *Singleton*,[29] a decision of the Supreme Court of Canada, where a taxpayer withdrew capital from a partnership to purchase a residential home for personal use and borrowed to restore the partnership capital using the family home as security. The crucial difference was that the taxpayer in *Singleton* could show that the two separate loans were commercially available in an open market, not arrangements available only in the context of a tax-minimization scheme. The CRA made no attempt to dispute the arrangement using GAAR, and subsequent discussion appears to reinforce the conclusion that GAAR would not have applied had it been raised by the CRA.[30]

A final Australian GAAR case, *Unit Trend*,[31] provides an illustration of a further situation in which courts will apply GAAR: a scheme in which a taxpayer legitimately uses legislatively endorsed tax measures in a manner never contemplated by the legislature, to achieve tax savings made possible by the juxtaposition of measures that by themselves offer no tax savings. The taxpayer in the case was a member of a group that constructed residential apartment buildings. Australia's GST law, like that in some other jurisdictions, zero-rates intra-group transfers to avoid group companies having to remit and then claim offsetting input tax credits for GST on transfers within the organization. The first step of the tax-avoidance arrangement was an

29 *Singleton v. Canada*, 2001 SCC 61.

30 See comments of Chief Justice Marc Noël in Hon. Marc Noël, Hon. Randall Bocock, Hon. Bruce Russell, Sharon Lee, Florence Sauvé, and Douglas Wright, "Judges' Panel," in *Report of Proceedings of the Seventy-Fourth Tax Conference*, 2022 Conference Report (Toronto: Canadian Tax Foundation, 2023), 3:1-16.

31 *Federal Commissioner of Taxation v. Unit Trend Services Pty. Ltd.*, [2013] HCA 16.

intra-group transfer of almost-completed apartment buildings to another group company. At that point, the value of the buildings was very close to their retail value, and far above the combined cost of the land, construction materials, and labour.

The second step of the arrangement involved an election for the method of calculating GST on the sale of the premises to retail customers. Australia allows vendors of real property to elect to use a margin scheme for the sale of the property, which denies the vendor input tax credits for GST on the expenses incurred prior to the sale and imposes GST only on the margin between the sale price and the GST-inclusive cost of the property. In economic terms, the margin scheme in theory yields the same tax revenue as the conventional tax invoice system, with the vendor claiming input tax credits for GST on all acquisitions and charging GST on the market value of the goods sold.

The vendor in *Unit Trend* elected to use the margin scheme to calculate the tax due on the sale of apartments to retail buyers, but treated the cost of the property as the market value at which the property had been transferred in the intra-group sale. Together, the zero-rating rule for intra-group transfers and the margin scheme for the second sale to retail customers insulated the largest part of the market value, the improvement from empty land to completed apartments, from GST. Separately, the election either to zero-rate the first sale or to use the margin scheme on the second sale would have constituted a legitimate tax choice wholly endorsed by the legislature. It was inconceivable, however, that the legislature contemplated that the two rules could be used in conjunction to remove GST from the bulk of the value of the property sold. The use of both rules in a pre-arranged scheme to avoid GST could not escape the application of GAAR.

These cases in which taxpayers entered into convoluted arrangements to bypass legislative boundaries can be contrasted with instances in which taxpayers abided by the legislative rules constraining tax benefits but opted for arrangements that clearly fell outside rules without the need for contrived or convoluted planning. If the legislature has established boundaries restricting access to tax benefits, but has implicitly accepted arrangements outside those boundaries as tax-effective, tax authorities will not be able to apply GAAR to deny taxpayers' access to the benefits.

This phenomenon is illustrated in the *Canada Trustco* case.[32] The taxpayer in *Canada Trustco* went to a bank subsidiary for a loan and was told that the interest rate would be lower if the loan were structured as a sale-and-leaseback arrangement using a finance lease. A sale-and-leaseback contract is simply a set of three legal transactions (sale, lease, and repurchase) that together amount to a blended-payment loan. Not surprisingly, accounting principles, which classify commercial transactions by reference to their economic substance rather than their legal label, collapse the three elements into a single loan arrangement. In contrast, Anglo legal interpretation practice, apart from that of the United States, recognizes each of the

32 *Canada Trustco*, supra note 17.

combined steps as a separate transaction for tax purposes. Relying on traditional legal interpretation doctrines, taxpayers treat a sale-and-leaseback arrangement as if the resulting finance lease were an operating lease rather than a loan. This arrangement allows a taxpayer seeking reduced effective interest charges to enter into a finance lease that shifts to a bank depreciation entitlement that the taxpayer is unable to absorb through current profits. By adopting limitations to capital cost allowance entitlements, reinforced by the tax administration through complementary regulations, Parliament has established constraints on depreciation claims by lessors in finance leases, but has implicitly accepted the legal form-over-economic-substance approach for arrangements not included in the specified limitations.

There was no dispute regarding the tax motives behind the form of the transaction in *Canada Trustco*. The taxpayer deliberately structured a blended-payment loan in a way that allowed it to enjoy tax benefits in the form of capital cost allowance deductions, and it shared the tax savings with the borrower by way of reduced implicit interest charges incorporated into nominal lease payments. The key question, as the trial judge observed, is whether Parliament has tacitly accepted this shifting of tax benefits in some sale-and-leaseback arrangements as effective for tax purposes, on the basis that legal form takes precedence over economic substance.[33] The fact that Parliament had established limitations on the amount of capital cost allowance that could be claimed in certain circumstances and had excluded from those limitations assets and arrangements similar to those in *Canada Trustco* reinforced the conclusion that the taxpayers' arrangements were not obviously inconsistent with government policy. It is thus not surprising that the trial judge, the Federal Court of Appeal,[34] and the Supreme Court of Canada[35] all found that the legally effective arrangement was not an abuse of the legislative policy and subject to GAAR.

Similar considerations explain the Supreme Court of Canada's rejection of the government's attempt to apply GAAR in *Alta Energy*.[36] Canada has many tax treaties that include a provision based on article 13 of the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development's model income tax convention,[37] to protect its right to tax capital gains on the disposition of real property by non-residents where the property is owned through interposed entities. The treaty with Luxembourg,[38] which was central to the issue in this case, differs from those other treaties in this respect. The text of article 13 in that treaty opens a wide hole in the measure if the taxpayer

33 *Canada Trustco Mortgage Company v. The Queen*, 2003 TCC 215, at paragraph 89.

34 *Canada v. Canada Trustco Mortgage Co.*, 2004 FCA 67.

35 *Canada Trustco*, supra note 17.

36 *Canada v. Alta Energy Luxembourg SARL*, 2021 SCC 49.

37 Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development, *Model Tax Convention on Income and on Capital: Full Version 2017* (Paris: OECD, 2019).

38 Convention Between the Government of Canada and the Government of the Grand Duchy of Luxembourg for the Avoidance of Double Taxation and the Prevention of Fiscal Evasion with Respect to Taxes on Income and on Capital, signed at Luxembourg on September 10, 1999.

can show that the owner of real property carried on a business on the property. The clear message in the court's decision was that GAAR could not be used to fix the obvious difficulty with the treaty.

A comparable message can be found in the decision of the Australian Full Federal Court in *Lamesa*:[39] If there is a problem with a treaty, the solution is to fix the treaty. The treaty in question in *Lamesa* was the Netherlands-Australia double taxation agreement,[40] which failed to include language found in other Australian tax treaties protecting Australia's right to tax capital gains on the indirect disposal of real property owned through a tier of enterprises. As in the case of the treaty in issue in *Alta Energy*, the government clearly was aware of the shortcomings of the treaty and left it in place while ensuring that other treaties did not suffer from the same shortcoming. The endorsement by the government of different tax outcomes for the same transaction depending on which treaty applied was accepted by courts in both the Canadian and Australian cases as an invitation by the government to treaty-shop.

Another example of a court declining to apply GAAR when a taxpayer has taken advantage of an implicit election in the tax law can be found in the decision of the Australian High Court in *Mills*.[41] Australia has one of the world's most comprehensive imputation systems. It returns all company tax to resident shareholders through refundable imputation credits attached to dividends. The system is complemented by a comprehensive "financial arrangements" regime that distinguishes between equity investments and debt instruments. Interest on stapled debt and convertible debt is treated as a "non-share" dividend for the purpose of the imputation system, and is entitled to imputation credits in the same manner as traditional dividends on shares. The taxpayer in *Mills* had issued stapled stock, and investors in the notes claimed imputation credits on the interest that they received on the advice of the taxpayer that the interest was treated as a dividend for tax purposes. The aspect of the arrangement that most troubled the ATO was its insertion in a cross-border arrangement involving a subsidiary in New Zealand.

The High Court accepted the ATO's argument that the purpose of the stapling arrangement was to provide imputation credits to investors, thus reducing the taxpayer's financing costs, but concluded that the purpose of the overall arrangement was to raise needed capital for a financial institution. There was no doubt that the arrangement was designed to be tax-effective, but viewed in terms of the larger objective, it could not be said that taking advantage of imputation rules offended GAAR. Importantly, there was nothing in the deeming rules that distinguished returns on debt and equity to indicate that the definitions of debt and equity, and interest and dividends, were to be limited in circumstances similar to the arrangement in the case.

39 *Lamesa Holding BV v. Federal Commissioner of Taxation*, [1997] FCA 134.

40 Agreement Between Australia and the Kingdom of the Netherlands for the Avoidance of Double Taxation and the Prevention of Fiscal Evasion with Respect to Taxes on Income, and Protocol, signed at Canberra on March 17, 1976.

41 *Mills v. Commissioner of Taxation*, [2012] HCA 51.

Had the legislature wished to constrain the application of the imputation system, it could have easily done so, and the High Court no doubt felt that it was not the court's role to draw lines that the legislature chose not to draw.

WHY AMEND?

The Canadian government's aim in extending GAAR, in particular adding an economic substance test to the measure, and in shifting the GAAR application threshold from "primary purpose" to "one of the main purposes," is presumably to enable the CRA to successfully apply GAAR to arrangements that have to date been shown to fall outside the reach of the anti-avoidance rule. There are sound reasons to conclude that the goal is unlikely to be achieved. Taxpayers devising clearly contrived arrangements to shoehorn a transaction into a preferable taxed arrangement—for example, funnelling the sale of a loss company through a series of complex transfers and arrangements wholly unnecessary to the sale of the business (*Deans Knight* and *MacKay*); creating tax-effective linked loans that would not be available in the market separately (*Hart*); altering a company's articles to shift value from one type of share to another (*Peabody*); looping a deposit guaranteed by a local bank through an offshore deposit (*Spotless*), and so on—already attract the application of a GAAR.

If there is room for an altered GAAR to have an impact as a result of the first change (the addition of an economic substance test), it is in respect of transactions that have been accepted at face value, consistent with their legal form, by courts but have been recognized, consistent with their economic substance, by accountants—for example, finance leases and repo transactions. US courts have generally deviated from their Anglo common-law counterparts in this respect by collapsing connected transactions into ones aligning with their economic substance.[42] For a brief period, UK courts did the same with selected arrangements under a judicially devised fiscal nullity doctrine, or *Ramsay* doctrine,[43] whereby a court would collapse preordained steps inserted into a commercial transaction to alter its tax consequences and uphold an assessment based on the substance of the overall commercial transaction. The UK doctrine has been explicitly rejected by courts in jurisdictions such as Canada[44] and Australia[45] with GAARs in place. Will the addition of an alternative economic substance test to Canada's GAAR broaden the concept of abuse to bring the *Ramsay* doctrine into Canadian law and capture arrangements currently outside the scope of the provision?

On its face, an economic substance test based solely on objective facts might appear to broaden the scope of Canada's GAAR. Subsection 245(2) of the Income Tax

42 For commentary on the US approach from a UK Anglo perspective, see M. Bernard Aidinoff, "Furniss v Dawson: The US Experience" (1985) 6:4 *Fiscal Studies* 66-76.

43 *W.T. Ramsay Ltd. v. Inland Revenue Commissioners*, [1982] AC 300.

44 *Stubart Investments Ltd. v. The Queen*, [1984] 1 SCR 536.

45 *John v. Federal Commissioner of Taxation* (1989), 166 CLR 417.

Act permits the CRA to reconstruct a transaction where there is an avoidance transaction (as defined in subsection 245(3)) and that transaction misuses a provision of the Act or would result in an abuse of the provisions of the Act (subsection 245(4)). Clearly, the addition of the economic substance test will have no impact on manipulative arrangements such as those in *Copthorne Holdings*, *Deans Knight*, and *MacKay* (and analogous Australian cases such as *Spotless*, *Hart*, and *Unit Trend*), which are already caught by the abuse and misuse tests in GAAR. Could the economic substance test change the results in arrangements that previously escaped the application of GAAR, such as those in *Canada Trustco* and *Alta Energy* (or the analogous *Lamesa* decision)?

It would, to be sure, create a dilemma for the CRA if it were to seek to use GAAR to unwind the arrangements in similar cases. If the CRA were successful, not only would impugned arrangements be brought under GAAR, but potentially so too would arrangements that have been long accepted by the legislature as legitimate tax-effective transactions. Most likely, when confronted with taxpayers taking advantage of clearly articulated boundaries in the law, such as the lender and borrower in *Canada Trustco*, the courts would acknowledge the economic substance of the arrangement—a sale and leaseback amounting to a blended-payments loan—and find that GAAR has no application to an arrangement explicitly or implicitly endorsed by Parliament.

Nor would an economic substance test be likely to have any impact on cases such as *Alta Energy* or *Lamesa*, where taxpayers are explicitly offered two alternative treatments in inconsistent treaties and elect to follow the path with the least tax burden. The government is well aware of the inconsistencies in the treaties that it has signed, and no policy objectives would be served if the courts were to step in and play a legislative role, telling taxpayers which option they should have chosen. The executive can address the inconsistencies at any time; it is not the role of the courts to fix known problems.

A separate group of transactions that could, in theory, be affected by the extension of GAAR comprises the so-called ordinary family dealings transactions that politicians introducing a GAAR in Parliament regularly promise will not be caught by the anti-avoidance rules.[46] The often-used euphemism for popular tax-avoidance arrangements commonly adopted by highest-income individuals is intended to protect from attack by tax authorities arrangements that would be considered anything but ordinary by most families—the mass of taxpayers who do not structure transactions to split income, convert remuneration and investment returns to preferentially taxed capital gains, or restructure holdings to extract profits in tax-effective forms.

Indeed, in one sense, the transactions contemplated by the ordinary family dealings label are precisely the sort of arrangements that should be targeted by a GAAR: transactions that are motivated almost exclusively by tax-minimization goals. It is thus not surprising that New Zealand's GAAR explicitly targets these arrangements,

46 Such assurances were made to both the Canadian and Australian Parliaments when their respective GAARs were introduced. See Graeme S. Cooper, "International Experience with General Anti-Avoidance Rules" (2001) 54:1 *Southern Methodist University Law Review* 83-130.

defining a "tax avoidance arrangement" as an arrangement that has a tax-avoidance purpose or effect "whether or not any other purpose or effect is referable to ordinary business or family dealings."[47] However, the explicit inclusion of these arrangements in one country's GAAR and the deliberate exclusion of the phrase from the Canadian rule, as well as the tacit acceptance by the CRA of many "ordinary family dealing" avoidance arrangements, mean that it is very unlikely that an expanded GAAR will have any impact on these tax-avoidance transactions.

Will the second change, the shift of the GAAR application threshold from "primary purpose" to "one of the main purposes," have a notable impact on the application of GAAR? Once again, this amendment will not protect any taxpayers carrying out tax-minimization schemes of the sort that have already been shown to fall within the scope of the rule. These are instances where parliamentary intent has been made clear through specific measures setting out the boundary between acceptable and unacceptable arrangements. Can the change help the CRA in situations where it has been unsuccessful—where the legislation provides taxpayers with options and taxpayers opt for the transaction that provides a lower tax liability? There is no reason to suspect that the change from primary purpose to one of the main purposes will have any effect on outcomes in these cases. Whether a primary purpose or one of the main purposes test is used, there must be a purpose of tax avoidance, and there is no tax avoidance if the legislature has seemingly endorsed the right of taxpayers to choose the option that they have chosen.

It thus seems highly likely that the concerns and speculation about the impact of the GAAR reforms are somewhat exaggerated. A look at the underlying foundations of judicial interpretations of GAAR in Canada and Australia suggests that those concerns may prove to be little more than a storm in a teacup.

47 New Zealand, Income Tax Act 2007, supra note 12, section YA1, definition of "tax avoidance arrangement."

canadian tax journal / revue fiscale canadienne (2024) 72:3, 635-47
https://doi.org/10.32721/ctj.2024.72.3.pf.ross

Policy Forum: Sailing Beyond the Sunset? Are De Jure Control and Other Bright-Line Tests Relevant After Deans Knight and the New GAAR?

David Ross*

PRÉCIS

Cet article convie les lecteurs à un périple à travers l'arrêt *Deans Knight Income Corp. c. Canada* de la Cour suprême du Canada et les affaires subséquentes dans lesquelles l'interprétation qu'a fait cet arrêt de la règle générale anti-évitement (RGAE) a été appliquée. L'auteur se fonde sur des métaphores issues de la philosophie grecque et de la navigation pour appuyer — et alléger — ses propos sur l'immortalité des sociétés, les critères de démarcation et la Loi de l'impôt sur le revenu.

L'auteur fait valoir que, dans *Deans Knight*, la majorité de la Cour suprême a commis une « erreur d'objet » : en appliquant la RGAE, la majorité a insisté sur l'objet premier du paragraphe 111(5), soit celui d'arrêter les échanges de pertes entre sociétés, aux dépends des autres objets de la loi, notamment celui d'apporter de la certitude aux sociétés publiques dont la rotation des actionnaires est élevée. Les futures affaires qui seront jugées à l'aune de la RGAE modifiée pourraient être encore plus vulnérables à une erreur d'objet.

L'auteur se demande ensuite si d'autres critères de démarcation de la Loi sont vulnérables au même genre d'erreur d'objet lorsque la RGAE est appliquée. Par exemple, il examine s'il pourrait y avoir abus du délai de 30 jours des règles sur la minimisation des pertes si le contribuable attend un jour de plus pour se conformer aux règles, abus des règles relatives aux « biens à revente précipitée » des paragraphes 12(12) à (14) si le contribuable attend un jour de plus pour vendre une maison, et abus de la partie IV ou de l'article 113 lorsque le contribuable achète une action de plus pour respecter un seuil de propriété. Bien qu'on puisse faire valoir que chacune de ces stratégies est abusive selon l'approche adoptée dans *Deans Knight*, ce serait une erreur de toujours interpréter les règles de manière aussi large. Les tribunaux devraient tenir compte de l'objectif du législateur pour l'utilisation

* Of the Faculty of Law, Thompson Rivers University, Kamloops, British Columbia (e-mail: dross@tru.ca).

d'un critère de démarcation avant d'appliquer la RGAE et se demander à quel point le critère est arbitraire et possiblement manipulable.

ABSTRACT

This article takes readers on a voyage through the Supreme Court of Canada's decision in *Deans Knight Income Corp. v. Canada* and subsequent cases that apply its interpretation of the general anti-avoidance rule (GAAR). The author draws on metaphors from Greek philosophy and sailing to aid—and lighten—the discussion of the immortality of corporations, bright lines, and the Income Tax Act.

The author argues that the majority of the Supreme Court in *Deans Knight* committed a "purpose error": in applying GAAR, the majority overemphasized subsection 111(5)'s primary purpose of stopping corporate loss trading at the expense of the legislation's other purposes, including providing certainty to public companies with high shareholder turnover. Future cases decided under the amended GAAR may be even more vulnerable to a purpose error.

The author then considers whether other bright-line tests in the Act are vulnerable to the same sort of purpose error if GAAR is applied. For example, he examines whether the 30-day time limit in the Act's stop-loss rules could be abused by waiting an extra day to comply with the rule, whether waiting one more day to sell a house could abuse the "flipped property" rules in subsections 12(12) to (14), and whether buying one more share to meet an ownership threshold could abuse part IV or section 113. While each of those strategies could arguably be abusive under the approach taken in *Deans Knight*, it would be an error to always interpret the rules so broadly. Courts should consider Parliament's purpose in using a bright-line test before applying GAAR, and ask how arbitrary and potentially manipulable the line is.

KEYWORDS: GAAR ■ STATUTORY INTERPRETATION ■ LOSS-RESTRICTION EVENT ■ STOP-LOSS RULES ■ FOREIGN AFFILIATE RULES ■ PUBLIC COMPANIES

CONTENTS

SETTING SAIL: AN INTRODUCTION

Theseus was the first king of Athens, and according to legend Athenians preserved his ship for centuries, replacing each piece as it wore out. Plutarch and other ancient philosophers debated when—if ever—the ship was no longer the Ship of Theseus: When there were no original parts left? Never?[1] Like the ship, a corporation's business and assets may change; its shareholders and directors may come and go; yet the corporation remains the same legal entity for tax purposes.

Tax and Plutarch make strange bedfellows, but tax needs to grapple with a similar question: When is a corporation so fundamentally transformed that it should no longer be able to deduct previous losses? Parliament answered the question in subsections 111(4) and (5) of the Income Tax Act[2] by drawing a bright line: when control of the corporation—understood to mean de jure control, or the ability to elect the majority of the corporation's directors—is acquired. Hence, it was long believed that the "loss-streaming" rules, as they are commonly described, applied when a person, or a non-arm's-length group, acquired a majority of the corporation's voting shares.

The Supreme Court of Canada in *Deans Knight Income Corp. v. Canada*[3] sunk that belief with its application of the general anti-avoidance rule (GAAR).[4] The majority's interpretation minimizes the role of the de jure control test in subsection 111(5) by characterizing it as the means chosen to implement Parliament's purpose but incompletely reflecting Parliament's purpose for the provision.

In my view, the court made a "purpose error" in its decision. As discussed further below, when a court interprets the text, context, and purpose of legislation with so much emphasis on one purpose that it ignores the legislation's other, competing purposes,[5] the court commits a purpose error. *Deans Knight* overemphasized subsection 111(5)'s primary purpose of stopping corporate loss trading at the expense of the legislation's other purposes, including providing certainty about when the rules apply in a wide variety of contexts.

In this article, I consider whether the court's reasoning in *Deans Knight* could blur other bright lines in the Act. Could such lines be dismissed in future GAAR cases as merely being the means that Parliament chose to implement a broader objective? Will the preamble to GAAR in new subsection 245(0.1)—which suggests that "certainty" is

---

1 Plutarch, *Plutarch's Lives*, trans. A.H. Clough (Boston: Ginn and Company, 1918).

2 RSC 1985, c. 1 (5th Supp.), as amended (herein referred to as "the Act"). Unless otherwise stated, statutory references in this article are to the Act.

3 2023 SCC 16. Unless otherwise noted, a reference to *Deans Knight* refers to the majority reasons written by Rowe J.

4 The general anti-avoidance rule is in section 245.

5 Mark Mancini, "The Purpose Error in the Modern Approach to Statutory Interpretation" (2022) 59:4 *Alberta Law Review* 919-48 (https://doi.org/10.29173/alr2702).

only a taxpayer concern and must be balanced against the government's "responsibility to protect the tax base"[6]—encourage courts to ignore, or de-emphasize, bright lines?

In my view, this would be a mistake. A bright-line rule also reflects a rationale: that Parliament values certainty to make the system easier for taxpayers to comply with and easier for the Canada Revenue Agency (CRA) and the courts to administer.[7] I suggest that, when applying GAAR to a bright line, courts should consider how arbitrary the line is, and how easy (or not) it is to manipulate compliance with the line, along with the purpose of the provision.

WHAT IS A PURPOSE ERROR?

A purpose error[8] occurs when a court determines legislation's primary purpose abstractly, and then overemphasizes that abstract purpose in a textual, contextual, and purposive interpretation. The court's emphasis on primary purpose risks blinding it to the secondary purposes that are also part of the legislation, and may overlook the fact that Parliament rarely, if ever, wants to achieve its primary purpose at all costs. The further back the court goes in its interpretation—the more abstractly it determines purpose—the more likely it is to commit a purpose error.[9]

Metaphorically, a law's primary purpose may be to build a large cargo ship. But if the courts interpret that law to make the ship ever larger, they might forget that Parliament also needed the ship to fit under bridges to make it to port; otherwise, the ship would be useless.[10]

How Is a Purpose Error Relevant to GAAR?

GAAR practically invites courts to make a purpose error as they go "behind the words of the legislation to determine the object, spirit or purpose of the provision or provisions relied upon by the taxpayer"[11] and determine whether the taxpayer frustrated

6 Bill C-59, An Act To Implement Certain Provisions of the Fall Economic Statement Tabled in Parliament on November 21, 2023 and Certain Provisions of the Budget Tabled in Parliament on March 28, 2023; SC 2024, c. 15; royal assent June 20, 2024, section 66(1).

7 Frank H. Easterbrook, "The Role of Original Intent in Statutory Construction" (1988) 11:1 *Harvard Journal of Law & Public Policy* 59-66.

8 See Mancini, supra note 5, for an in-depth discussion of the concept.

9 Ibid.

10 For a more concrete example of competing purposes, consider the foreign accrual property income (FAPI) rules in sections 91 and 95. They have to balance two mutually exclusive goals: capital export neutrality (according to which Canadian residents should be taxed the same if they invest abroad or at home) and business competitiveness in foreign jurisdictions (which means that Canadians doing business abroad should not suffer because the tax rate in Canada is higher than the rate applied to their competitors in the foreign jurisdiction). *Canada v. Loblaw Financial Holdings Inc.*, 2021 SCC 51, at paragraphs 54 to 56.

11 *Copthorne Holdings Ltd. v. Canada*, 2011 SCC 63, at paragraph 66.

that rationale. However, a "GAAR analysis is a species of statutory interpretation."[12] Courts use the same method to search for a rationale as in any other application of statutory interpretation: a unified textual, contextual, and purposive approach, but applied to determine the provision's rationale "that may not be captured by the bare meaning of the words themselves."[13] In analyzing purpose, courts should recognize that legislation may reflect competing purposes and that Parliament had a purpose in mind when it chose a particular means, such as a bright-line test, over other ways of achieving its purpose.

Does the New Purpose Provision in GAAR Downplay Certainty Too Much?

Paragraph (b) of the new preamble in subsection 245(0.1) states that GAAR

> (b) strikes a balance between:
> (i) the *Government of Canada's* responsibility to protect the tax base and the fairness of the tax system, and
> (ii) *taxpayers'* need for certainty in planning their affairs [emphasis added].[14]

The juxtaposition is striking. The government wants fairness (and revenue); certainty is something that only taxpayers want. Subsection 245(0.1) seems to ignore the fact that certainty may be as much a part of the object, spirit, and purpose of a provision as the provision's primary objective is, and that certainty can benefit everyone. Simple, certain tests are easier for the CRA and the courts to apply. The danger is that the new purpose statement may reinforce the error in *Deans Knight* of dismissing a bright-line test as the means chosen to carry out Parliament's primary purpose, rather than properly weighing secondary purposes in the interpretation.

TURNING OFF THE LIGHTS? THE BRIGHT-LINE DE JURE CONTROL TEST AND DEANS KNIGHT

How the Supreme Court in Deans Knight Commits a Purpose Error

The majority of the Supreme Court in *Deans Knight* focused almost exclusively on the general mischief that subsection 111(5) sought to prevent: corporations being acquired so that new shareholders with a new business could use the corporation's losses for their benefit.[15]

12 *Deans Knight*, supra note 3, at paragraph 151, from the dissenting reasons of Côté J.

13 *Copthorne*, supra note 11, at paragraph 70.

14 Bill C-59, supra note 6, section 66(1).

15 *Deans Knight*, supra note 3, at paragraph 113.

Although the decision acknowledges that "the way a provision has been drafted is important within the text, context and purpose analysis,"[16] it dismisses any consideration of the test chosen by Parliament as the mere means that Parliament chose to target loss trading: "In [subsection] 111(5), Parliament has clearly chosen a test for control: *de jure* control. . . . This being so, it is primarily a means of giving effect to Parliament's aim, rather than a complete encapsulation of the aim itself."[17]

De jure control was adopted because it was simple and certain.[18] The test is basically a mathematical test. It means the control exercised by the person or persons who own enough voting shares to elect a majority of the corporation's directors. In the simplest of cases, if a shareholder owns 50 percent plus one of the (voting) shares, that shareholder has control.[19] The analysis in *Deans Knight* erases the certainty and ignores the simplicity of this test.

The (Public) Shareholders of Theseus, Inc. Conundrum

In two subsequent cases, *Madison Pacific*[20] and *Total Energy*,[21] the Tax Court of Canada applied *Deans Knight* to transactions involving widely held, publicly traded loss companies that were acquired for their losses while avoiding subsection 111(5). Should the Tax Court have been so quick to apply *Deans Knight* to public companies? Public companies raise a number of issues that were not considered by the Supreme Court in *Deans Knight*.

First, a significant shareholder may have practical (that is, de facto) control over public company board elections with far fewer than 50 percent plus one of the votes,

16 Ibid., at paragraph 71. See also *DEML Investments Limited v. The King*, 2024 TCC 27, at paragraphs 31 to 33.

17 *Deans Knight*, supra note 3, at paragraph 116.

18 *Duha Printers (Western) Ltd. v. Canada*, [1998] 1 SCR 795, at paragraph 58. See also *Deans Knight*, supra note 3, at paragraph 92.

19 *Duha Printers*, supra note 18. For a detailed analysis of de jure control, see Roger Taylor and Marie-Claude Marcil, "Duha Printers Revisited: Issues Regarding Corporate Control" (2022) 70:3 *Canadian Tax Journal* 495-561. Taylor and Marcil discuss how the actual threshold may not be 50 percent depending on the constating documents of the corporation (corporate articles, bylaws, or a unanimous shareholders' agreement) and the applicable corporate law. In some corporations, director decisions may require a supermajority, or unanimity, and more than a bare majority of votes may be required to have control. In other cases, a shareholder may have control *without* the current ability to elect the number of directors needed to pass resolutions—because the shareholder *does* have enough votes to alter the corporation's constating documents to reduce those thresholds or change the election procedure. Trust agreements may also be considered in the de jure control analysis.

20 *Madison Pacific Properties Inc. v. The King*, 2023 TCC 180; under appeal to the Federal Court of Appeal, docket no. A-30-24.

21 *Total Energy Services Inc. v. The King*, 2024 TCC 12; under appeal to the Federal Court of Appeal, docket no. A-86-24.

as recognized by Canadian securities law. Under the early warning system,[22] an acquiror must publicly disclose when it acquires any voting securities that constitute 10 percent or more of the outstanding securities of that class to ensure that "the marketplace is promptly informed of significant accumulations of securities of a reporting issuer that may influence control of that issuer."[23]

Unlike in *Deans Knight*, such shareholders need not rely on a non-unanimous shareholders' agreement to avoid a de jure acquisition of control.[24] All that they need to rely on is human nature. Other shareholders who might oppose them will have trouble coordinating, and some shareholders may not bother to vote at all at a shareholders' meeting.

That is exactly what happened in *Madison Pacific*. One group acquired 46.56 percent of the voting shares and effectively controlled the company. The Tax Court found that 93.56 percent of the remaining, disparate shareholders would have to both vote, and vote for the same opposing slate of directors, to thwart that group. The Tax Court noted that at the 1999 annual general meeting, a little over half of the shares were voted—and the 46.56 percent shareholders represented 81 percent of shares voted. The taxpayer's witness even admitted that the "broad base of shareholders . . . made it easier to avoid an acquisition of control."[25]

Second, public company shareholders change all the time. This can affect the subjective question of practical control[26] and brings us closer to the heart of the conundrum: *Deans Knight* states that the purpose of subsection 111(5) is to prevent unrelated parties with a new business from *acquiring* the loss company and making use of its losses for the benefit of *new* shareholders;[27] but *Deans Knight* does not tell us what "acquired" means, how it relates to control, or who "new" shareholders are in the public company context.

---

22 *National Instrument* 62-104, "Take-Over Bids and Issuer Bids," at part 5.

23 Ontario Securities Commission, "Early Warning System and Alternative Monthly Reporting System" (www.osc.ca/en/industry/companies/mergers-and-acquisitions/early-warning-system-and-alternative-monthly-reporting-system).

24 A friendly party purchased a nominal number of shares but did not become a party to the investment agreement considered by the court, meaning that the investment agreement was not a unanimous shareholders' agreement and would not be considered a constating document for the purpose of applying the de jure control test. *Deans Knight*, supra note 3, at paragraphs 15 and 132.

25 *Madison Pacific*, supra note 20, at paragraph 162. See also *Total Energy*, supra note 21, at paragraph 68.

26 For example, imagine that one active shareholder sells its shares to less interested new shareholders. With less concentrated opposition, a pre-existing shareholder may suddenly have "control." But could that shareholder be said to have "acquired" control in these circumstances?

27 *Deans Knight*, supra note 3, at paragraph 113; *Madison Pacific*, supra note 20, at paragraph 136; and *Total Energy*, supra note 21, at paragraphs 77 and 78.

"Acquired" could mean that there is a chance, or a strong chance, or a near-certainty, that a new significant shareholder will prevail in a board election, but *Deans Knight* does not say which. Certainly, "new shareholders" does not mean that GAAR could apply every time public company shares change hands; but what degree of ownership must change, and how "concentrated" must the new shareholder group be?

Citing *Silicon Graphics*,[28] *Deans Knight* acknowledges that Parliament chose de jure control, in part, in consideration of public companies:

> [Subsection] 111(5) does not refer merely to a change in control, but to a situation where control has been "acquired by a person or group of persons." The provision indicates Parliament's focus on circumstances in which there is a shift in the locus of control, rather than, for example, high turnover in the shares of a publicly traded company.[29]

Parliament used the bright line of de jure control to avoid subjective debates about the control of public companies. Unfortunately, neither *Madison Pacific* nor *Total Energy* addresses whether the analysis should have been influenced by this competing purpose.

The public company conundrum may have no firm answer under the current jurisprudence. C'est la vie. Plutarch and his fellow Greeks never resolved their conundrum either. Half said that Theseus's ship was the same, and half said that it was not.[30]

How Should a Court Reconcile Bright Lines and GAAR?

Taken too far, my argument could appear to suggest that where Parliament legislates with a precise bright line, the object, spirit, and purpose of the provision are fully captured by the words such that GAAR has no application.[31] *Deans Knight* correctly rejected the idea that GAAR cannot apply to specifically worded provisions *solely* because Parliament legislated with precision.[32]

---

28 *Silicon Graphics Ltd. v. Canada*, 2002 FCA 260.

29 *Deans Knight*, supra note 3, at paragraph 81, citing *Silicon Graphics*, supra note 28, at paragraph 36.

30 Plutarch, supra note 1.

31 I am not suggesting that the result in *Deans Knight* was incorrect. Rather, the court should have placed greater emphasis on the legislative history, including how Parliament previously deemed certain transactions to be acquisitions of control, notwithstanding that they were not, strictly speaking, acquisitions of de jure control. However, it is beyond the scope of this article to further explore the reasoning in *Deans Knight*.

32 *Deans Knight*, supra note 3, at paragraphs 72 and 73. See also *Lehigh Cement Limited v. Canada*, 2010 FCA 124, at paragraph 37: "When Parliament adds an exemption to the *Income Tax Act*, even one as detailed and specific as subparagraph 212(1)(b)(vii), it cannot possibly describe every transaction within or without the intended scope of the exemption. Therefore, it is conceivable that a transaction may misuse a statutory exemption comprised of one or more bright-line tests."

In dissent, Côté J agreed, but found that the majority invoked this principle to skirt the real question: Saying that GAAR *can* apply to precisely worded provisions is not the same as saying that GAAR *should* apply to *this* precisely worded provision because *these* transactions frustrate the object, spirit, or purpose of the provision.[33]

Courts should, as *Deans Knight* says, consider the primary purpose of the provision and what, if any, purpose the bright line serves. In determining whether to apply GAAR to a transaction or transactions that avoid—or that comply with (if it is advantageous to do so)—a bright-line provision, courts could also consider the following questions:

- How arbitrary is the line?
- How open is the line to manipulation?
- Is the impugned provision "positive," in granting a tax benefit, or "negative"—that is, a specific anti-avoidance rule?

OTHER BRIGHT LINES AND GAAR

In this section, I consider whether the reasoning in *Deans Knight* could or should apply to some of the Act's "stop-loss" rules, and other bright lines based on time or ownership. I examine how arbitrary and how manipulable those other lines are, their purpose, and how that should influence a GAAR analysis.

Other Share Ownership Thresholds: Section 113 and Part IV

In section 113, a corporation may deduct in computing taxable income an amount in respect of dividends received from a "foreign affiliate." In part IV, a corporate taxpayer does not pay the refundable part IV tax on dividends if the payer is "connected" to the taxpayer (unless the payer itself receives a dividend refund as a consequence of paying the dividend).

These rules, like subsection 111(5), are triggered by share ownership.[34] Compared to de jure control, however, the 10 percent threshold in section 113 is more arbitrary. Acquiring just one more voting share makes a real difference when the one extra vote is the difference between having de jure control over directors' elections and not having control. There is no practical difference between 9.99 percent ownership and 10 percent ownership, other than certain tax consequences. The taxpayer who genuinely increases their investment in a foreign corporation to the 10 percent threshold, even with the tax advantages in mind, ought to be able to claim the benefit of the deduction under section 113 without fear of GAAR. We must, however,

33 *Deans Knight*, supra note 3, at paragraphs 150 to 152.

34 Grossly simplified, if the taxpayer owns, with related parties, directly or indirectly, 10 percent or more of a class of shares of the foreign corporation, the foreign corporation is a foreign affiliate. See the definitions of "foreign affiliate" and "equity percentage" in section 95. In part IV, "connected" means that the recipient either controls the payer or owns at least 10 percent of the votes and 10 percent of the fair market value of all of the payer's shares.

ask what a "genuine" investment is, because share ownership can be manipulated to land on the "right" side of the line and to allow the tax benefits to be claimed by temporarily increasing ownership.

In applying GAAR, the courts would need to consider the provisions' broader purposes. Part IV exists to prevent undue deferral of individual-level tax on dividends from domestic "portfolio" investments.[35] Section 113 is part of a similar scheme applying to foreign corporations that, in general, aims to prevent the deferral of Canadian tax on foreign portfolio investments while at the same time exempting from tax dividends paid out of active business income earned abroad by foreign corporations.[36] In both part IV and the foreign affiliate rules, the ownership threshold is a proxy that divides passive portfolio investment from active investment that the Act says deserves special treatment.[37] In both cases, if shareholders are, temporarily or artificially, trying to transform a portfolio investment into something more to claim the tax benefit and inappropriately defer Canadian tax, GAAR ought to have a role in policing such manipulations.

Unlike under subsection 111(5), the taxpayer acquiring 10 percent of a foreign corporation or 10 percent of the votes and value of a domestic corporation is trying to claim the benefit of a "positive" bright line. Dividends are part of income;[38] receipt of income should not be artificially deferred. Yet, in both part IV and section 113, Parliament grants relief to corporations that invest beyond the portfolio level. When Parliament grants an extraordinary benefit, as opposed to denying the normal operation of the Act, extra attention should be given to the benefit's purpose.

Before 2024, GAAR would not have applied to a purchase (or disposition) of shares to manipulate foreign affiliate status because the Act already has a specific anti-avoidance rule targeting such transactions.[39] If "it can reasonably be considered that the principal purpose for the acquisition or disposition"[40] is to reduce or defer tax by manipulating foreign affiliate status, paragraph 95(6)(b) applies, although, unlike in GAAR, there is no exception if there is no misuse or abuse.[41]

---

35 David G. Duff and Geoffrey Loomer, *Taxation of Business Organizations in Canada*, 2d ed. (Markham, ON: LexisNexis Canada, 2019), at 275.

36 *Loblaw*, supra note 10; and Jinyan Li, Arthur Cockfield, and J. Scott Wilkie, *International Taxation in Canada: Principles and Practices*, 4th ed. (Markham, ON: LexisNexis Canada, 2018), at 253 and 316-17. The summary above has numerous qualifications, but a more detailed discussion of the FAPI and foreign affiliate rules is beyond the scope of this article.

37 Canadian securities regulators also consider 10 percent ownership significant enough that the market must be made aware of that investor's involvement. See the text accompanying note 22, supra.

38 Sections 82 and 90.

39 Paragraph 95(6)(b). See also *Lehigh Cement Limited v. Canada*, 2014 FCA 103.

40 Paragraph 95(6)(b).

41 With potentially harsh results. Imagine that Canada enters into a new treaty. A taxpayer with a 9.99 percent investment in an existing company in the new treaty partner realizes that there

Since the enactment of the GAAR amendments, if the principal purpose of the acquisition or disposition is not to reduce or defer tax, but *one* of the main purposes is to obtain such a tax benefit, GAAR may apply because of the expanded definition of an avoidance transaction.[42]

Is 31 Days the Functional Equivalent of 30 Days? Timing Under the Stop-Loss Rules and GAAR

The Act contains numerous rules that deny a loss when property is sold and the same, or identical, property is acquired or reacquired by the taxpayer or affiliated parties during the 30 days on either side of the transaction.[43] The rule says 30 days. If a taxpayer waits 31 days to acquire the same or identical property, they comply with the rule, and it appears to be an article of faith that GAAR would not apply where this bright line is avoided.[44]

But could GAAR apply now? The rationale of the stop-loss rules

> appears to be to preclude a taxpayer from claiming an accrued capital loss by disposing of a "loser" and repurchasing it within a matter of days. . . . [T]he taxpayer shows by his repurchase that he did not really desire to part with his loser.[45]

Imagine a taxpayer with an accrued loss on shares who desires to offset other realized gains. The taxpayer sells the "loser" to recognize the loss. Having read the Act, the taxpayer waits patiently for 31 days before acquiring identical shares of the loser, and has a tax benefit from the use of the loss. This is an avoidance transaction because the

---

are now tax advantages if it increases its investment. Paragraph 95(6)(b) may apply because the primary purpose of the acquisition is to qualify for foreign affiliate status and reduce tax, even though that acquisition may not be considered abusive because the taxpayer is genuinely responding to the incentives in the Act and the new tax treaty for foreign affiliate status. But, unlike GAAR, paragraph 95(6)(b) includes no misuse or abuse exception. For a discussion of a similar issue, but in an international treaty context, see CRA document 2023-0964521C6, May 17, 2023, and Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development, *Model Tax Convention on Income and on Capital: Condensed Version* (Paris: OECD, 2017), at 593-94. It is beyond the scope of this article to compare the interpretation of the Act's bright lines for the purposes of GAAR with the interpretation of tax treaties.

42 The amendments to GAAR lower the "avoidance transaction" threshold from a transaction that is "primarily" tax-motivated to a transaction where "one of the main purposes" is to obtain a tax benefit. Bill C-59, supra note 6.

43 For non-depreciable capital property, see subparagraph 40(2)(g)(i), subsection 40(3.4), and section 54, the definition of "superficial loss." For depreciable property, see subsection 13(21.2). For inventory of moneylenders, see subsections 18(13) to (15). For further details, see Duff and Loomer, supra note 35, at 950-58.

44 Brian M. Studniberg, "Minding the Gap in Tax Interpretation: Does Specificity Oust the General Anti-Avoidance Rule Post-Copthorne?" (2012) 38:1 *Queen's Law Journal* 209-57; and Robert Couzin, "Canada GAAR: Trap Set for the Unwary" (1998) 10:1 *International Tax Review* 41-43.

45 Warren Grover, "Superficial Losses" (1974) 22:3 *Canadian Tax Journal* 253-59, at 253.

taxpayer sold the shares in order to realize the tax benefit, not because they desired to part with the investment. Certainly, one of the main reasons was to realize the benefit, and the taxpayer sailed around the stop-loss rules by waiting 31 days. Following the reasoning in *Deans Knight*, these transactions may frustrate the primary purpose of the stop-loss rules and GAAR may sink the taxpayer's ship.

However, GAAR should not apply in this way. Parliament's 30-day bright line in these circumstances is truly arbitrary. Parliament could have chosen 1 day, or a year, or not have bothered with a stop-loss rule at all,[46] but in the end copied the United States and prescribed a 30-day bright line.[47] A 30-day rule stops the most egregious cases of tax-loss selling, and it is certain and easy to apply, but it is not a principled rule. The taxpayer who "genuinely" sells but reacquires 29 days later for sound investment reasons is caught, while the taxpayer who is willing to risk parting with their investment for 31 days may claim a loss.

Unlike shares, time cannot be bought, sold, borrowed, or loaned, or otherwise manipulated. And, unlike part IV or the foreign affiliate rules, the stop-loss rules are negative rules. Taxpayers can normally claim losses on dispositions; only an arbitrary time limit prevents them from doing so. In earlier GAAR jurisprudence, it appears that the courts may have given taxpayers avoiding a negative rule more latitude because the precise and unequivocal negative rule departed from the normal operation of the Act.[48]

Both the arbitrariness of the rule, and its relative invulnerability to manipulation, favour finding that the line's certainty is as important as the legislation's primary purpose. Even if a taxpayer intended to sell in order to claim the tax losses, the Act ignores that intent if the taxpayer complies with the arbitrary time limit.[49]

Waiting To Flip a House

Like the stop-loss rules, the "flipped property" rules in subsections 12(12) to (14) apply if a minimum holding period is not met.[50] If they apply, the rules deem any gain on the sale of a housing unit to be on income account and not capital account, and fully included in income.

---

46 The Carter commission thought that regulations to prevent selling securities to recognize tax losses "only lead to more complex manipulations." Canada, *Report of the Royal Commission on Taxation*, vol. 3 (Ottawa: Queen's Printer, 1967), chapter 15, at 367.

47 Grover, supra note 45.

48 See, for example, *Canada v. Landrus*, 2009 FCA 113, at paragraph 45, in respect of the stop-loss rule applying to depreciable property. The same reasoning may not be as persuasive after *Deans Knight*.

49 Limitation periods act the same way. They are "acts of peace," meaning the peace of mind from knowing that past deeds can no longer be litigated after an arbitrary amount of time. Ontario, *Report of the Ontario Law Reform Commission on Limitation of Actions* (Toronto: Department of the Attorney General, 1969), at 9-10.

50 The rules apply if a housing unit was owned, or held, "by the taxpayer for less than 365 consecutive days prior to its disposition." Paragraph 12(13)(b).

Arguably, GAAR could apply to the canny taxpayer who waits 1 extra day before selling, but it is unnecessary. The purpose of the rules is to curb residential property speculation,[51] and a taxpayer who is speculating is taxable on income account regardless of the length of ownership.[52] If the taxpayer is not speculating, they are not guilty of the targeted mischief, and they have not misused or abused the rules by selling after 365 days.

Like 30 days or 10 percent ownership, the time limit is arbitrary.[53] But in contrast to the stop-loss rules, the taxpayer's intention matters if they avoid the bright line—although not because of GAAR, but because distinguishing between capital and income account already depends on intention.

COMING HOME TO PORT: PLATO, FAIRNESS, AND THE GOOD SHIP TAX

To parrot another Athenian,[54] if judges were philosopher-kings, there would be no need for this debate. Enlightened and politically adept rulers would make perfectly fair decisions about every dispute, including how much tax to pay. In this less than ideal world, we are stuck with the Act, and a judiciary that must interpret compromises between competing purposes, between allegedly fair but vague principles, and certain, but often arbitrary, bright lines. Maybe it is not always fair for new owners to benefit from a corporation's previous losses. Maybe it is not fair if taxpayers realize a loss without giving up their investment.

But applying GAAR to make things fair—or a judge's perception of fair—would be a purpose error. When Parliament draws a bright line, where and how Parliament draws the line means something. If courts forget that, taxpayers are going to look down and find that the Good Ship Tax has been replaced by judges, one plank at a time, and wonder whether it is still the same ship or not.

---

51 Canada, Department of Finance, 2022 Budget, Budget Plan, April 7, 2022, at 49.

52 Jinyan Li, Joanne Magee, and J. Scott Wilkie, *Principles of Canadian Income Tax Law*, 10th ed. (Toronto: Thomson Reuters, 2022), at chapter 10.2.

53 There are other arbitrary time limits in the Act, and, similarly, GAAR should not apply solely because the taxpayer waited long enough. See the three-year time limit in subsection 69(11), and *Canada v. Oxford Properties Group Inc.*, 2018 FCA 30. GAAR applied, but not because the taxpayer outwaited the time limit. (The taxpayer did argue, successfully in the Tax Court but unsuccessfully on appeal, that GAAR should *not* apply because the taxpayer *had* waited long enough.)

54 Plato, *The Republic of Plato*, trans. Allan Bloom (New York: Basic Books, 1968).

canadian tax journal / revue fiscale canadienne (2024) 72:3, 649-69
https://doi.org/10.32721/ctj.2024.72.3.fn

Finances of the Nation

FEDERAL AND PROVINCIAL INCOME SUPPORT PROGRAMS FOR SENIORS IN CANADA

*Tammy Schirle**

For almost 60 years, the Canadian Tax Foundation published an annual monograph, Finances of the Nation, *and its predecessor,* The National Finances. *In a change of format, the 2014* Canadian Tax Journal *introduced a new "Finances of the Nation" feature, which presents annual surveys of provincial and territorial budgets and topical articles on taxation and public expenditures in Canada.*

This article describes the main federal and provincial income support programs available to seniors in Canada. Key provisions of programs, differences in demographic characteristics, and differences in labour market experience are important for understanding differences in the receipt of benefits across and within provinces. The author constructs and uses synthetic work histories to illustrate differences in expected contributions and benefits under the enhanced Canada Pension Plan. The author also describes how components of federal and provincial programs that target support to low-income seniors drive high marginal effective tax rates, resulting in provincial differences in the rewards for continued work at older ages.

The underlying data for the Finances of the Nation monographs and for the articles in this journal will be published online in the near future.

KEYWORDS: RETIREMENT ■ PENSION PLANS ■ OLD AGE BENEFITS ■ SENIOR CITIZENS

CONTENTS

* Of the Department of Economics, Wilfrid Laurier University, Waterloo, Ontario (e-mail: tschirle@wlu.ca). This study benefited from valuable research assistance provided by Larissa Pereira, Grace Wang, and Aatif Sheriff. Support for research assistance has been provided by the Laurier Centre for Economic Research and Policy Analysis and the Joint Programming Initiative "More Years, Better Lives."

INTRODUCTION

Canada's retirement income system involves a complex web of policies. The programs support Canadians' efforts to save for their retirement years, protect against risks associated with aging, and ensure a minimum standard of living for seniors.[1] It is arguable that existing federal and provincial income support programs have been successful in reducing poverty among seniors, and they remain an important source of retirement income.[2] The objective of this article is to describe key federal and provincial income support programs and to illustrate how seniors' interactions with the programs that are available across and within provinces may vary substantially. While the provisions of federal programs apply to all Canadians equally, individuals' demographic characteristics and work histories affect how they interact with programs over their lifetime, resulting in fairly different benefits and contributions across and within provinces. Moreover, the programs designed to target benefits to the lowest-income seniors often involve steep clawback rates that make higher-income seniors ineligible, resulting in high marginal effective tax rates (METRs) and discouraging work at older ages.

The article proceeds as follows. First, I provide a description of the main federal income support programs for Canadian seniors—the Canada Pension Plan (CPP), old age security (OAS), and the guaranteed income supplement and related allowances (collectively, GIS)—and the benefits received in each province over the years 2015-2019, based on the Canadian Income Survey (CIS).[3] Then, focusing on the recently enhanced CPP, I construct a set of synthetic work histories and use them to illustrate how different individuals interact with the program, resulting in very different benefits and contributions over their lifetime. The synthetic work histories are designed to reflect provincial differences in earnings, jobless spells, fertility, and time taken away from the labour market for the primary caregiving of children. The examples are intended to represent the expectations of a young person entering the labour market at the age of 18 in 2025 with plans to retire at the age of 65 in 2072. The variation in work histories, as well as differences in life expectancy, result in interesting similarities and differences across groups in both monthly and lifetime benefits. I then describe the income support programs that are available

1 For a discussion of the system, see Kevin Milligan and Tammy Schirle, *The Retirement Income System and the Risks Faced by Canadian Seniors*, prepared as the final synthesis report for the Canadian Labour Market and Skills Researcher Network's Challenges to Canada's Retirement Income System Research Program, Working Paper no. 120 (Waterloo, ON: Canadian Labour Market and Skills Researcher Network, 2013).

2 For example, Tammy Schirle, "Senior Poverty in Canada: A Decomposition Analysis" (2013) 39:4 *Canadian Public Policy* 517-40 (https://doi.org/10.3138/CPP.39.4.517), suggests that retirement income policies are an important determinant of senior poverty in Canada.

3 I use the public use microdata files of the CIS provided by Statistics Canada: Statistics Canada, "Canadian Income Survey: Public Use Microdata File" (www150.statcan.gc.ca/n1/en/catalogue/72M0003X). See the notes to this article's tables and figures for sample details.

to low-income seniors at the provincial level before considering how the structure of these programs affects seniors' METRs and, ultimately, their willingness to work at older ages.

FEDERAL INCOME SUPPORT PROGRAMS FOR SENIORS

Current Income Support Programs

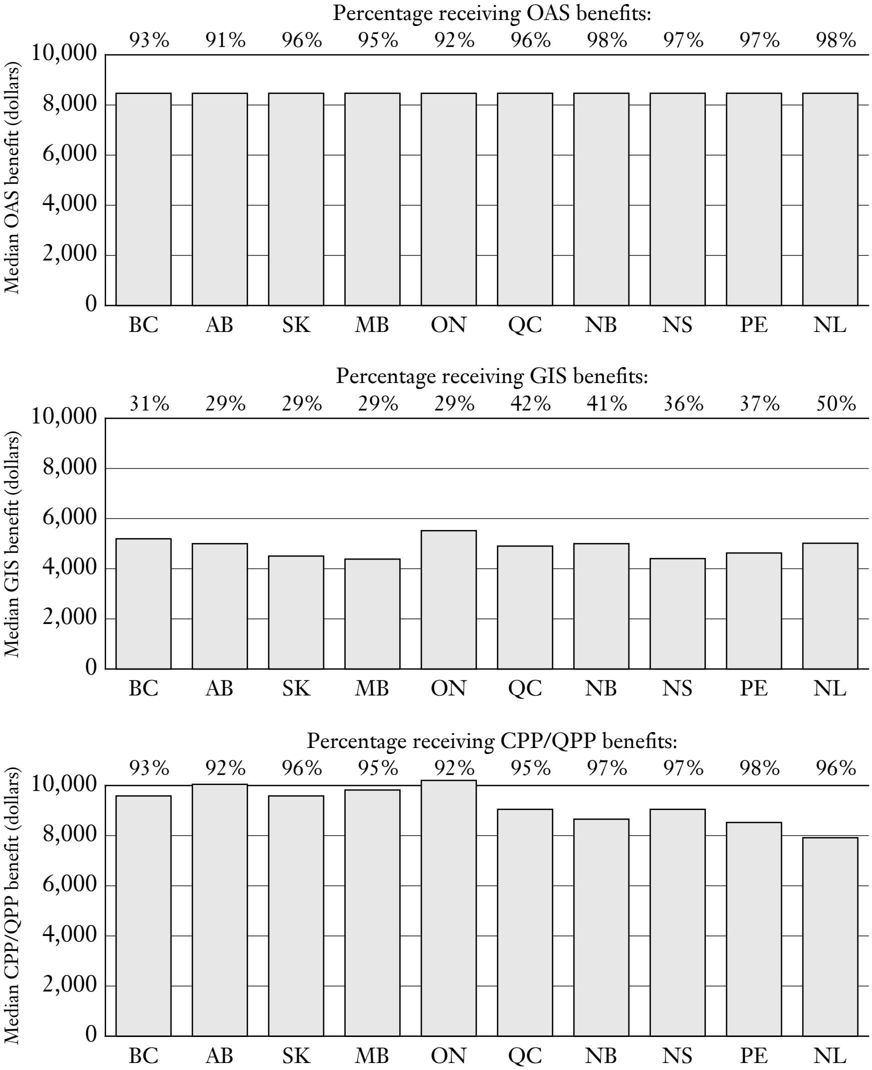
It is useful to think of federal income support for seniors as being provided primarily through three programs—OAS, GIS, and CPP.[4] (Note that individuals who contributed to the Quebec Pension Plan [QPP] exclusively, or who contributed to both CPP and QPP and reside in Quebec when they begin receiving pension benefits, will access QPP rather than CPP for their retirement pension. Because QPP has historically been structured similar to CPP, I do not address QPP differences in this section and instead focus on the federal programs.) Figure 1 shows the takeup rates and median benefit levels of recipients for each of these programs across provinces over the years 2015-2019.

For each of these programs, differences in benefit takeup rates and typical annual benefits across provinces largely reflect the parameters that define eligibility. OAS (represented in the top panel of figure 1) is commonly thought of as a universal demogrant, in that most individuals aged 65 and over are eligible for the full benefit. In 2024, OAS benefits are reduced for *individual* net income over \$90,997 with a clawback rate of 15 percent, so that high-income individuals over age 65 may not qualify. Instead, they may choose to defer initiating benefits until age 70 and receive a higher monthly benefit upon takeup. There are also residency requirements to consider. To be eligible for benefits, a person must have resided in Canada for at least 10 years. For those who have been resident for less than 40 years, the benefit is prorated. As a result, differences across provinces in employment at older ages and length of residence in Canada largely explain provincial differences in benefits received. However, once benefits begin to be received, the typical OAS benefit is the same across provinces.

GIS is an income-tested benefit, with eligibility depending on the income of the unmarried individual or the married couple. Some income is exempt from the test—\$5,000 of employment income, and 50 percent of self-employment income between \$5,000 and \$15,000—but the benefit is generally phased out for any other taxable income at a clawback rate of 50 percent. As a result, differences across provinces in the employment rates of seniors, or in the receipt of other retirement income (from CPP, employer-based pensions, or other taxable sources), explain the provincial differences in GIS receipt and benefit levels observed in figure 1 (middle panel).

4 For an overview of federal programs and a summary of changes since the 1960s, see Kevin Milligan and Tammy Schirle, "Retirement Incentives and Canada's Social Security Programs," in Axel Börsch-Supan and Courtney Coile, eds., *Social Security Programs and Retirement Around the World: Reforms and Retirement Incentives* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2021), 79-107.

FIGURE 1 Takeup Rates and Median Benefit Levels Across Provinces, 2015-2019



BC = British Columbia; AB = Alberta; SK = Saskatchewan; MB = Manitoba; ON = Ontario; QC = Quebec; NB = New Brunswick; NS = Nova Scotia; PE = Prince Edward Island; NL = Newfoundland and Labrador.

OAS = old age security; GIS = guaranteed income supplement and related allowances; CPP = Canada Pension Plan; QPP = Quebec Pension Plan.

Note: All benefits are reported in February 2024 dollars. The sample includes individuals aged 65 and older, and benefit amounts reflect the median benefits among those individuals receiving some benefits.

Source: Author's tabulations using Statistics Canada, "Canadian Income Survey: Public Use Microdata File," for years 2015-2019 (www150.statcan.gc.ca/n1/en/catalogue/72M0003X).

For example, Manitoba is among the provinces with the lowest rate of GIS receipt (29 percent), and recipients tend to have lower benefits. Over the same period, Manitoba seniors were also most likely to report that someone in their family was receiving registered pension plan (RPP) income (79 percent). In contrast, Newfoundland and Labrador seniors were the least likely to report RPP income (62 percent) and the most likely to receive GIS (50 percent).[5]

CPP is different from OAS and GIS in that benefit eligibility depends almost entirely on a person's work history in Canada. To be eligible for CPP retirement benefits, a person must have made at least one contribution to CPP, which should happen as long as one earns more than the CPP's year's basic exemption (YBE) from employment in any year after turning 18 years old. Benefits may be initiated as early as age 60, with adjustments made to offer a higher monthly benefit if takeup is deferred to later ages (up to age 70).[6] The vast majority of eligible Canadians start receiving CPP by age 65.[7] Differences across provinces in the percentage of individuals aged 65 or older receiving CPP (shown in the bottom panel of figure 1) largely reflect differences in the timing of CPP/QPP takeup across provinces as well as differences in work histories affecting the eligibility of individuals.

When we consider the CPP benefits currently received by seniors, some of the differences observed across provinces (in the bottom panel of figure 1) reflect individual work histories and related contributions to the plan. However, some of those differences also reflect the age at which individuals typically take up benefits. Moreover, some differences reflect the year in which benefits were initiated and the rules for calculating benefits that were in place at that time. Making comparisons across a range of seniors at a single point in time makes it difficult to disentangle the mechanisms at work.

For this reason, in the next section I consider the provisions of the recently enhanced CPP framework and focus on a simple example—a person who will be 18 years old in 2025 and plans to take up CPP on turning 65. This person will be eligible for CPP after the enhanced framework's contributions and benefits are fully phased in. From her perspective today, and seeing what is typical in her province, what might she expect in terms of lifetime CPP benefits and contributions? By examining a range of potential work histories and expectations for this person's future—histories and expectations that vary by province, gender, and level of education—we can get a better sense of how different individuals expect to benefit from CPP provisions.

5 Based on author's tabulations using the same CIS sample noted for figure 1. Statistics Canada, "Labour Force Survey: Public Use Microdata File," for years 2015-2019 (www150.statcan.gc.ca/n1/en/catalogue/72M0003X).

6 Gender differences in participation in CPP were historically significant, but the gap has narrowed as the employment rates of men and women have converged over time. See Milligan and Schirle, supra note 4.

7 For estimates, see Office of the Chief Actuary, Office of the Superintendent of Financial Institutions Canada, *Actuarial Report (31st) on the Canada Pension Plan as at 31 December 2021, Published December 2022* (Ottawa: Office of the Chief Actuary, 2022).

The Enhanced Canada Pension Plan

In 2016, the Canadian provinces agreed to an expansion of the CPP. This expansion and the contributions to fund it are being phased in over time. Higher contribution rates are being phased in over the 2019-2024 period, and entitlement to additional benefits will depend on whether one made those additional contributions. In this section, I consider the situation of a person who will turn 18 years old in 2025 and is estimating her potential retirement income at age 65 in 2072. How does this enhanced CPP work, how much might it cost her to contribute, and how much might she benefit in return?

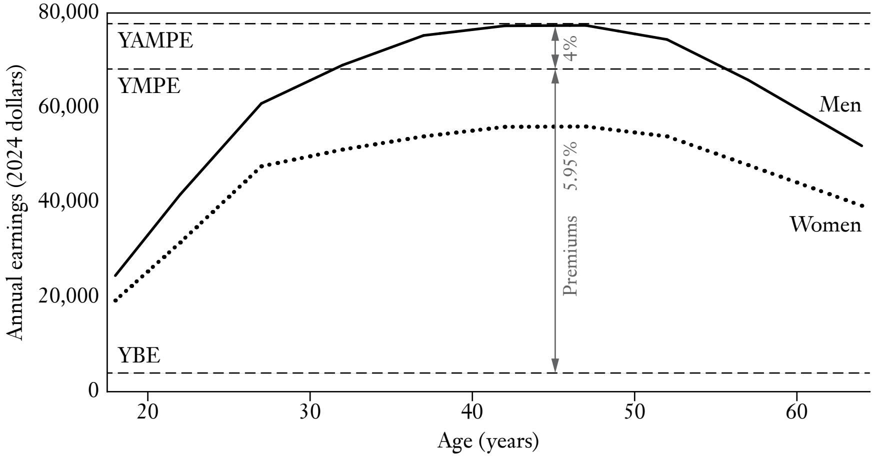
I begin with an overview of key enhanced CPP provisions that define a person's contributions and benefits. I consider how one's work history may vary across and within provinces, along the lines of gender and level of education. I then estimate the potential CPP benefits one might expect to receive on the basis of synthetic work histories that are constructed to reflect provincial differences in earnings, fertility, and jobless periods. When these considerations are together, we see that the enhanced CPP provisions offer Canadians benefits that closely align with their pensionable earnings and contributions, with differences resulting from provisions that resemble insurance to cover jobless periods and longevity risk.

CPP Contributions and Benefit Calculation

The enhanced CPP is best described as being made up of three parts. "Basic" CPP represents the provisions of the plan that were in place prior to 2016. The basic pension was designed to replace 25 percent of a person's average earnings up to an earnings cap—the year's maximum pensionable earnings (YMPE). The next two parts represent the recent expansion of CPP. The "first additional" CPP represents the expanded replacement rate—an additional 8.33 percent of average earnings (up to the YMPE) is replaced. The "second additional" CPP represents the expansion of the earnings cap, with the new standard of the year's additional maximum pensionable earnings (YAMPE) being set 14 percent higher than the YMPE, and additional pensionable earnings being replaced at a rate of 33.33 percent.

As an example, consider the earnings profiles presented in figure 2, representing the earnings of men and women from ages 18 to 64 in Canada. (The profiles' earnings are stated in 2024 dollars and represent the median earnings of men and women working full year in Canada over the period 2015-2019.) For the enhanced CPP, these individuals will make contributions only on earnings that fall below the pensionable earnings cap (YAMPE) and above the YBE. CPP premiums on earnings below the YMPE are set at 5.95 percent, while premiums on earnings between the YMPE and YAMPE are set at 4 percent. The higher contribution rate on earnings below the YMPE reflects the fact that current contributions to CPP are used to pre-fund the future pensions of current contributors as well as to help fund the current pensions of current pensioners. (Until the late 1990s, the CPP was entirely funded on a pay-as-you-go basis. Note that current pensioners will receive an expansion of benefits that is related only to the enhancement of the CPP in proportion to their additional contributions.) As

FIGURE 2 Median Annual Earnings of Full-Year Employees in Canada, 2015-2019



YAMPE = year's additional maximum pensionable earnings; YMPE = year's maximum pensionable earnings; YBE = year's basic exemption.

Note: In 2024, the YBE was $3,500 and the YMPE was $68,500. When the enhanced Canada Pension Plan is fully implemented, the YAMPE will be the YMPE times 1.14 ($78,090).

Source: Estimates based on author's tabulations using Statistics Canada, "Canadian Income Survey: Public Use Microdata File," for years 2015-2019 (www150.statcan.gc.ca/n1/en/catalogue/72M0003X), for individuals aged 18-64 working full year within each age group.

shown in figure 2, women who work full year do not typically earn more than the YMPE and will make contributions at a rate of 5.95 percent at all ages; their total contributions are lower when they are closer to age 18 and higher in their 40s, when their earnings are higher. The earnings profile of men in this example is similar to women's. Their total contributions are lower early in their working lives, when earnings are below the YMPE; by their mid-30s, their earnings surpass the YMPE and reach the YAMPE mid-career. At this stage, men make the maximum contributions, with no contributions on earnings above the YAMPE threshold.

Calculating the benefits that a person will receive at age 65 is not as straightforward as determining their contributions. There are several steps to the exercise because the provisions related to each part of enhanced CPP benefits (basic, first additional, and second additional) have slight differences. For each part, we must calculate the average ratio of annual earnings to the pensionable earnings thresholds (YMPE and YAMPE) after applying the provisions for exclusions and adjustments to a person's earnings history. These provisions for calculating initial CPP benefits are summarized in table 1. Once CPP is initiated, benefits are indexed to increase with price inflation.

TABLE 1 Overview of the Calculation of Initial Enhanced CPP Benefits

Provision	Basic CPP	First additional CPP	Second additional CPP
1. Begin with full work history, age 18-64 (47 years); calculate the relevant ratios (capped at 1)	Ratio: each year's earnings/YMPE	Ratio: each year's earnings/YMPE	Ratio: each year's (earnings − YMPE)/(YAMPE − YMPE)
2. Apply child-rearing provisions for children under age 7	Consider years while the child is under age 7: remove years with earnings below the YBE from the history; remove years in which earnings/YMPE is lower than average	Attribute the five-year average ratio prior to the child's birth, while the child is under age 7, if the attributed ratio is higher than the actual ratio	Attribute the five-year average ratio prior to the child's birth, while the child is under age 7, if the attributed ratio is higher than the actual ratio
3. Apply low-earnings provisions	Remove 17% of years with the lowest ratios; at least 10 years remain	Keep the 40 years with the highest ratios	Keep the 40 years with the highest ratios
4. Find the average ratio (*AR*) for each part	AR^{Basic}	AR^{1st}	AR^{2nd}
5. Find the five-year average of thresholds for each part at the time of takeup	*YMPE5*	*YMPE5*	*YAMPE5*
6. Calculate the initial monthly benefit, to be paid over one's lifetime, indexed to inflation	CPP benefit = $(0.25 * YMPE5 * AR^{Basic} + 0.833 * YMPE5 * AR^{1st} + 0.3333 * (YAMPE5 - YMPE5) * AR^{2nd})/12$		

CPP = Canada Pension Plan; YMPE = year's maximum pensionable earnings; YAMPE = year's additional maximum pensionable earnings; YBE = year's basic exemption.

From table 1, we can see that the enhanced CPP is designed to replace 33.33 percent of a person's average earnings (up to the YAMPE earnings cap). However, the calculation of average earnings within each part of CPP implies that the relationship between earnings, contributions, and benefits will not be identical for all recipients.

Provincial Differences That Matter

The benefit levels presented in figure 1 suggest that there are significant differences in the experience of CPP recipients across provinces. Below, I consider how the various provisions for enhanced CPP benefits (table 2) may have different effects on contributions and benefit eligibility across and within provinces, given differences in individual characteristics and labour market experiences.

Caregiving of Children

The child-rearing provisions in the CPP effectively attribute higher contributions than are actually made by primary caregivers who have relatively low earnings while their children are young. The provisions work as a subsidy, with the greatest benefit going to those who have more children and take extended parental leaves. Typically, mothers are designated as the primary caregivers for the purposes of these provisions, although parents can choose which parent will be designated as the primary caregiver for child benefit and pension purposes.

To the extent that there are differences across provinces in the number of children that people have, the caregiving provisions will result in some differences across provinces in CPP benefits. In figure 3, it is clear that total fertility rates vary across provinces, being higher in the prairie provinces and Quebec than in other provinces.

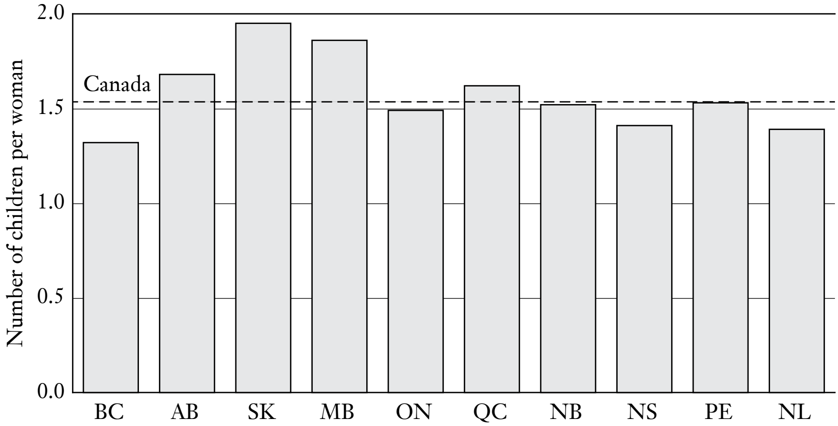
Jobless and Other Low-Earnings Periods

In addition to the child-rearing provisions, low-earnings provisions allow individuals with a long enough work history to drop some of their lowest-earnings years before calculating their average earnings for CPP purposes. These provisions benefit individuals who had significant time away from paid work after they reached age 18, whether for education purposes or as a result of spells of unemployment, which may vary in both frequency and duration across groups. To give a sense of how individuals across provinces might benefit from these provisions, figure 4 shows estimates of the unemployment rate and the average duration of unemployment for men and women aged 18 to 64.

In the 2015-2019 period, men in the Atlantic provinces tended to have the highest unemployment rates. Men in Alberta had the longest spells of unemployment across all provinces and had slightly lower unemployment rates than men in the Atlantic provinces. To obtain an estimate of the extent to which such spells can matter over one's entire work history, I estimate the number of years that people between the ages of 23 and 49 spend working full year, part year, or not at all, by gender and highest level of education (based on the CIS). The results are presented in figure 5.

The variation both within and across provinces gives us a sense of how the CPP's low-earnings provisions offer a source of insurance to cover jobless spells. For example, those with lower levels of education (high school or less [H] in figure 5) spend more years making low (or even zero) contributions to CPP, while those who are more likely to work without interruption (that is, those with higher levels of education—college/trades [C] or university [U]) are effectively required to make higher contributions that subsidize those facing jobless periods. The gender differences seen in figure 5 largely reflect gender differences in caregiving roles, since women (particularly those with lower levels of education) are more likely to remain out of the paid workforce (often as caregivers) but do not typically have longer unemployment spells than men when they are searching for work (as in figure 4).

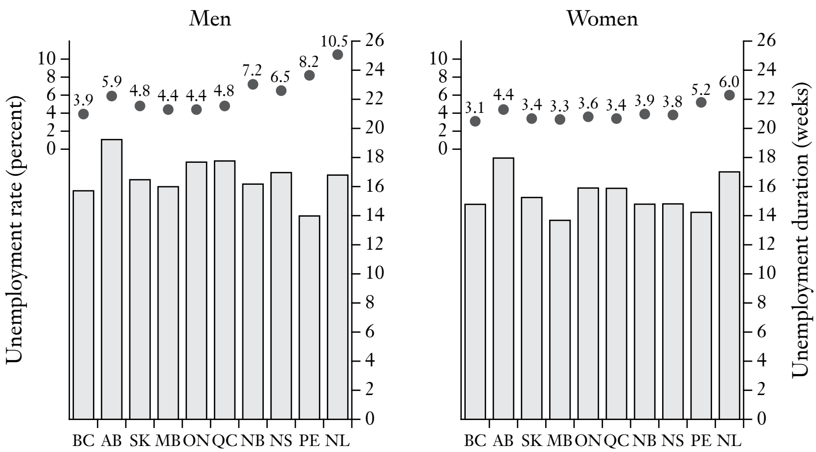
FIGURE 3 Total Fertility of Women in Canada, by Province, 2015-2019



BC = British Columbia; AB = Alberta; SK = Saskatchewan; MB = Manitoba; ON = Ontario; QC = Quebec; NB = New Brunswick; NS = Nova Scotia; PE = Prince Edward Island; NL = Newfoundland and Labrador.

Source: Based on information in Claudine Provencher and Nora Galbraith, *Fertility in Canada, 1921 to 2022* (Ottawa: Statistics Canada, 2024) (www150.statcan.gc.ca/n1/pub/91f0015m/91f0015m2024001-eng.pdf).

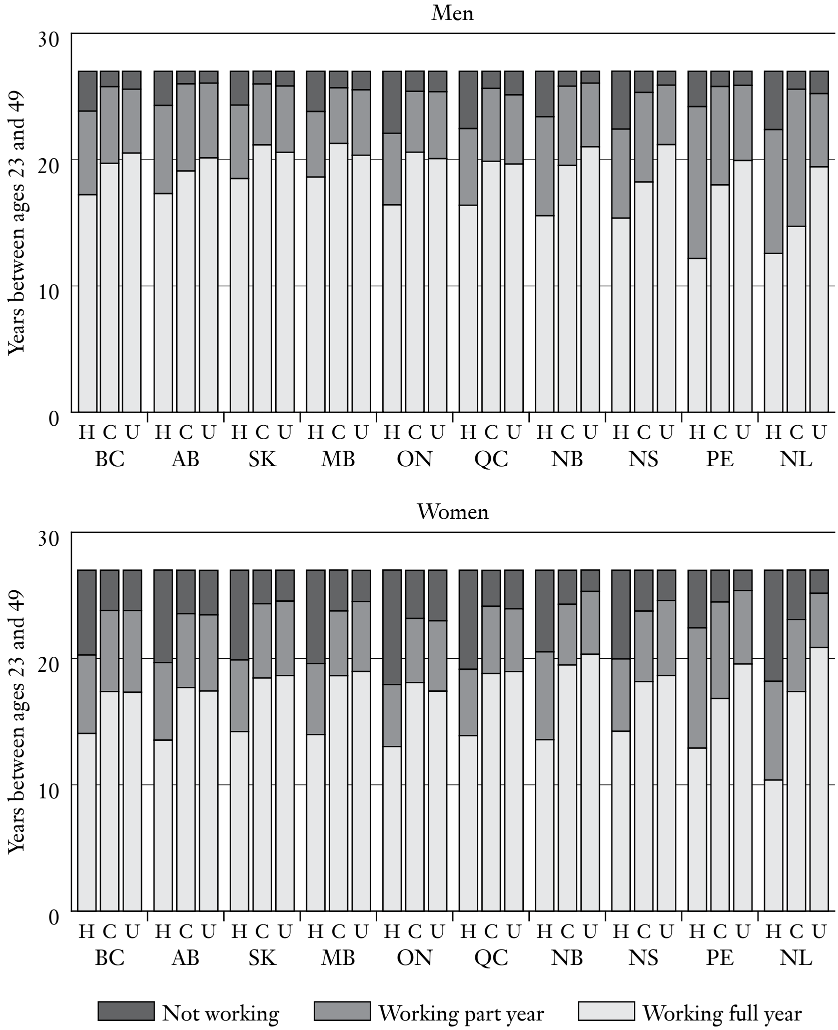
FIGURE 4 Unemployment Rate and Duration, by Gender, Ages 18-64, 2015-2019



BC = British Columbia; AB = Alberta; SK = Saskatchewan; MB = Manitoba; ON = Ontario; QC = Quebec; NB = New Brunswick; NS = Nova Scotia; PE = Prince Edward Island; NL = Newfoundland and Labrador.

Source: Author's tabulations using Statistics Canada, "Labour Force Survey: Public Use Microdata File," for years 2015-2019 (https://doi.org/10.25318/71m0001x-eng), using a sample of men and women aged 18-64 in each province.

FIGURE 5 Estimated Years Not Working, Working Part Year, and Working Full Year, by Gender and Highest Level of Education, Ages 23-49, 2015-2019



BC = British Columbia; AB = Alberta; SK = Saskatchewan; MB = Manitoba; ON = Ontario; QC = Quebec; NB = New Brunswick; NS = Nova Scotia; PE = Prince Edward Island; NL = Newfoundland and Labrador.

H = high school or less; C = college/trades; U = university.

Source: Author's tabulations based on Statistics Canada, "Canadian Income Survey: Public Use Microdata File," for years 2015-2019 (www150.statcan.gc.ca/n1/en/catalogue/72M0003X).

Longevity Differentials

Once a person takes up CPP, the benefit is paid every month for the rest of the person's life, with adjustments for inflation. As a result, there are differences in the lifetime benefits that one might expect to receive, given differences in life expectancy across provinces and genders. Similar to an employer-provided defined benefit pension plan, CPP provides a form of longevity insurance for Canadians, with the pensions of those who live longer effectively being supported by those with shorter lives. Women are likely to live and enjoy benefits longer than men after age 65 in all Canadian provinces (see figure 6). Across provinces, those in British Columbia tend to live the longest, followed by those in Ontario. Men in Newfoundland and Labrador have the shortest life expectancy in Canada.

Potential Initial and Lifetime CPP Benefits

Initial CPP Benefits

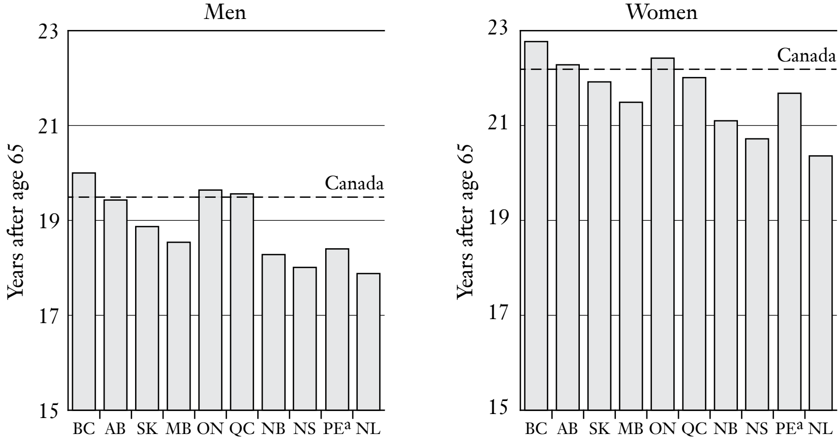
To get a sense of the differences in CPP benefits that might be expected within and across provinces, I construct synthetic work histories to represent men and women with different levels of education in each province and derive their expected annual CPP benefits upon retirement at age 65. These histories reflect the provincial differences presented above, and incorporate estimates of men's and women's median full-year earnings at each age, lower earnings while going to school, expected jobless spells, and the timing and number of children that women have.[8] Using these synthetic work histories, I apply the provisions summarized in table 1 and construct estimates of individuals' initial CPP benefits at age 65. The results are presented in table 2.

From table 2, it is clear that there is a close relationship between average earnings over a person's lifetime and benefit levels. However, when considering individuals with similar average earnings, we can see examples of the disconnect between earnings and benefits.

For example, consider men with low levels of education in Newfoundland and Labrador and in British Columbia. The former expect nearly the same annual benefits from CPP as the latter, despite much higher average earnings in British Columbia. The lower average in Newfoundland and Labrador, however, in part reflects more years spent jobless (as in figure 5) rather than significantly lower earnings while working full year. When CPP provisions allow low-earnings years to be dropped from a person's work history, average earnings for men in Newfoundland and Labrador

8 The earnings and jobless spells (between ages 23 and 49) are based on the 2015-2019 CIS estimates for each gender, province, and education group, similar to those presented in figures 2 and 5. Statistics Canada, "Labour Force Survey: Public Use Microdata File," for years 2015-2019 (www150.statcan.gc.ca/n1/en/catalogue/72M0003X). For the number of children, women are assigned one child if their provincial total fertility is lower than the Canadian average (in figure 3) and two otherwise, with the timing of a first child being based on estimates in Statistics Canada, "First-Time Mothers in Canada, 2019" (www150.statcan.gc.ca/n1/pub/11-627-m/11-627-m2020071-eng.htm).

FIGURE 6 Life Expectancy After Age 65, by Gender and Province, 2017-2019



BC = British Columbia; AB = Alberta; SK = Saskatchewan; MB = Manitoba; ON = Ontario; QC = Quebec; NB = New Brunswick; NS = Nova Scotia; PE = Prince Edward Island; NL = Newfoundland and Labrador.

a Life expectancy estimates for Prince Edward Island are available only for age interval 65-69.

Sources: Statistics Canada table 13-10-0114-01, "Life Expectancy and Other Elements of the Complete Life Table, Three-Year Estimates, Canada, All Provinces Except Prince Edward Island" (https://doi.org/10.25318/1310011401-eng); and Statistics Canada table 13-10-0140-01, "Life Expectancy and Other Elements of the Abridged Life Table, Three-Year Estimates, Prince Edward Island and the Territories" (https://doi.org/10.25318/1310014001-eng).

are boosted more for CPP purposes, bringing their benefits more in line with those for men in British Columbia.

Consider also women in Newfoundland and Labrador and in Prince Edward Island with college and trades degrees, who have average earnings in a range similar to the earnings of men with high school or less in Nova Scotia. In the synthetic work histories for these provinces, it is assumed that these women have one child. They are allowed to drop up to seven years of relatively low earnings from their work history for the basic CPP calculation, before they apply the same low-earnings provisions that the men in Nova Scotia can apply. As a result, these provisions substantially raise the average earnings used for the purposes of the CPP benefits calculation, leading to higher CPP benefits for the women who are primary caregivers.

Lifetime CPP Benefits and Contributions

These small differences in initial CPP benefits can add up to large differences over a person's lifetime. Given substantial differences across provinces and gender in life expectancy after age 65 (see figure 6), we expect to see provincial differences in a

TABLE 2 Average Earnings and Initial CPP Benefits at Age 65 (Synthetic Work Histories)

	Men					
	High school or less		College/trades		University	
	Average earnings	CPP at 65	Average earnings	CPP at 65	Average earnings	CPP at 65
	dollars					
British Columbia	49,198	17,711	65,819	23,248	71,106	23,554
Alberta	54,712	19,847	77,383	23,700	88,897	24,245
Saskatchewan	45,376	16,462	71,671	23,708	78,934	23,927
Manitoba	45,860	16,636	62,086	21,984	68,969	22,631
Ontario	44,918	16,786	64,279	22,795	76,445	23,138
New Brunswick	42,175	15,554	56,421	20,077	73,625	23,036
Nova Scotia	38,759	14,384	55,698	20,273	75,773	23,233
Prince Edward Island	38,152	13,887	49,951	17,762	67,132	22,144
Newfoundland and Labrador	46,430	17,422	66,725	22,513	84,469	23,320

	Women					
	High school or less		College/trades		University	
	Average earnings	CPP at 65	Average earnings	CPP at 65	Average earnings	CPP at 65
	dollars					
British Columbia	30,366	12,071	39,408	15,118	49,790	19,541
Alberta	33,674	13,588	47,413	17,873	58,539	21,666
Saskatchewan	28,811	11,715	42,616	16,424	58,255	22,094
Manitoba	30,181	11,778	40,726	15,565	57,481	22,479
Ontario	26,984	10,709	41,158	15,616	54,287	20,785
New Brunswick	28,615	10,971	35,531	13,327	61,712	22,888
Nova Scotia	27,027	10,488	37,486	14,420	56,355	21,064
Prince Edward Island	24,737	9,423	38,668	14,688	57,716	20,892
Newfoundland and Labrador	21,943	9,168	38,994	15,345	69,700	22,918

CPP = Canada Pension Plan.

Note: Quebec is omitted because most Quebec residents contribute to and benefit from the Quebec Pension Plan rather than the CPP.

Sources: Author's tabulations using Statistics Canada, "Canadian Income Survey: Public Use Microdata File," for years 2015-2019 (www150.statcan.gc.ca/n1/en/catalogue/72M0003X); and provisions of the Canada Pension Plan Act.

person's lifetime benefits. To clarify the connection between a person's lifetime CPP benefits and contributions, I consider the individuals with synthetic work histories described above, and their initial CPP benefits described in table 2, and then assume that they live to age 102. Their contributions and benefits are discounted from age 65 by 2 percent per year, and their expected benefits depend on their province- and gender-specific probability of survival to each age after reaching 65.[9] Summing benefits and contributions over their lifetime, I then obtain the ratio of individuals' lifetime benefits and contributions. The resulting ratios, representing men and women at each education level in each province, are presented in figure 7 in relation to their life expectancy after age 65.

The higher life expectancy of women clearly drives the higher CPP benefits-to-contributions ratio for women compared to that for men in all provinces. Across provinces, we can see that lower-educated women in Newfoundland and Labrador have among the highest benefits-to-contributions ratios. Despite having the lowest life expectancy and lowest average earnings among women, they appear to benefit the most from the child-rearing and low-earnings provisions in terms of their initial CPP benefits, and that adds up over their lifetime. The differences seen across education groups within a province, however, are worthy of further consideration. In the example shown here, the same survival probabilities have been applied to all women in the same province. The literature, however, suggests that individuals in higher-income groups are expected to live longer than individuals in lower-income groups.[10] If provincial survival estimates were adjusted to capture this, one would expect the benefits-to-contributions ratios for those with lower education to fall, and the ratios for those with higher education to rise.

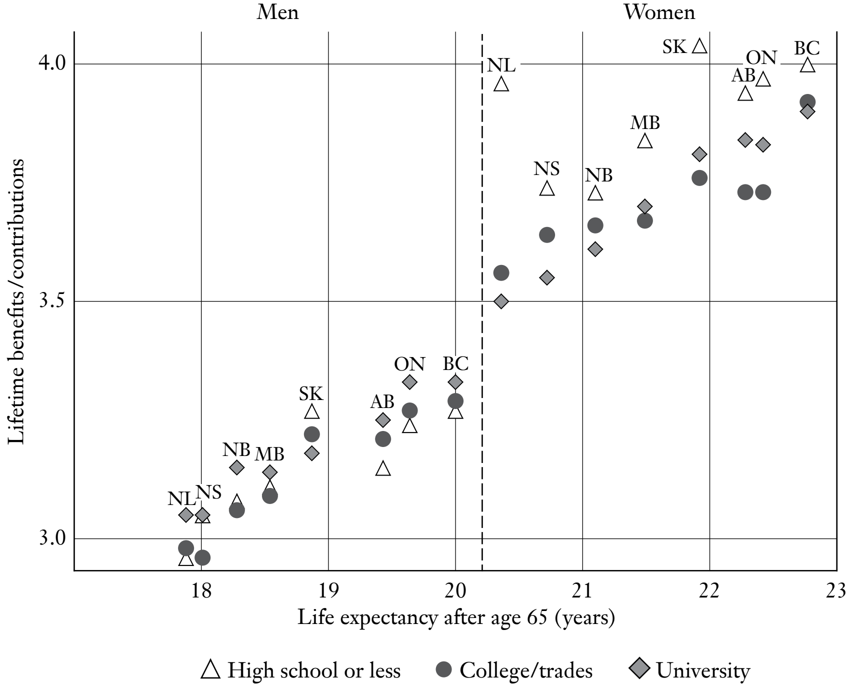
Among men, the estimates in figure 7 more clearly represent the relationship whereby individuals with higher life expectancy enjoy higher CPP benefits relative to the contributions they made over their lifetime. Among men, we see that those in British Columbia enjoy the highest ratio of benefits to contributions, while men in Newfoundland and Labrador tend to have the lowest ratio. This relationship is

---

9 I use age-, gender-, and province-specific survival probabilities at each age, based on the 2019 mortality rates in Statistics Canada's life tables. See the source note to figure 6: Statistics Canada table 13-10-0114-01, "Life Expectancy and Other Elements of the Complete Life Table, Three-Year Estimates, Canada, All Provinces Except Prince Edward Island" (https://doi.org/10.25318/1310011401-eng); and Statistics Canada table 13-10-0140-01, "Life Expectancy and Other Elements of the Abridged Life Table, Three-Year Estimates, Prince Edward Island and the Territories" (https://doi.org/10.25318/1310014001-eng). I do not provide lifetime benefit estimates for Prince Edward Island because age-specific rates are not available.

10 For example, Kevin Milligan and Tammy Schirle, "The Evolution of Longevity: Evidence from Canada" (2021) 54:1 *Canadian Journal of Economics* 164-92 (https://doi.org/10.1111/caje.12497), provide estimates suggesting that there is a 3.6-year gap in life expectancy between women from the top and bottom 5 percent of earners, and an 8-year gap between men in the top and bottom 5 percent.

FIGURE 7 Ratio of CPP Lifetime Benefits to Contributions, and Life Expectancy



BC = British Columbia; AB = Alberta; SK = Saskatchewan; MB = Manitoba; ON = Ontario; NB = New Brunswick; NS = Nova Scotia; NL = Newfoundland and Labrador.

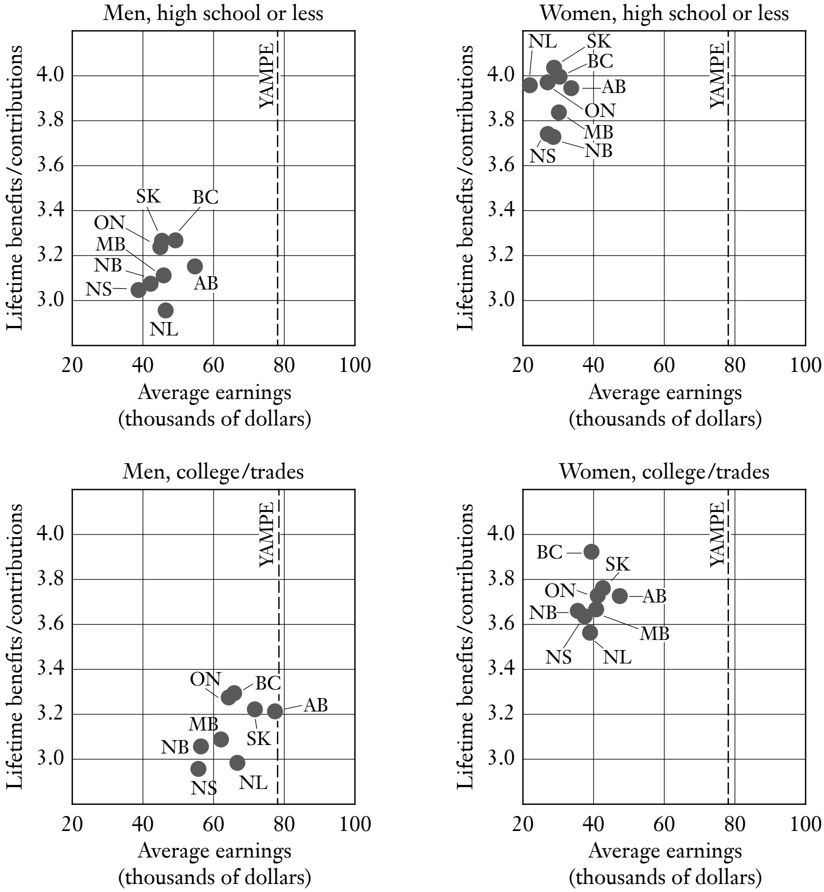
CPP = Canada Pension Plan.

Note: Quebec is omitted because most Quebec residents contribute to and benefit from the Quebec Pension Plan rather than the CPP. Prince Edward Island is omitted because life expectancy and survival probability estimates are available only for age intervals, so its results are not directly comparable with those for other provinces.

Source: Author's tabulations.

further exemplified in figure 8, which groups individuals with similar synthetic work histories (by gender and education) and relates their ratio of lifetime benefits to contributions and average earnings. The small differences in average earnings within groups are effectively diminished once low-earnings provisions are applied to the benefits calculation, so that most differences in the ratio of lifetime benefits to contributions relate to life expectancy. Only among women with lower education (in the top panel of figure 8) do the child-rearing and low-earnings provisions play a dominant role in affecting women's relative benefits-to-contributions ratios. Across groups of men in figures 7 and 8, it is worth noting that the ratios of lifetime benefits to contributions fall within a similar range across education groups. This suggests

FIGURE 8 Ratio of CPP Lifetime Benefits to Contributions and Average Annual Earnings, by Gender and Highest Level of Education

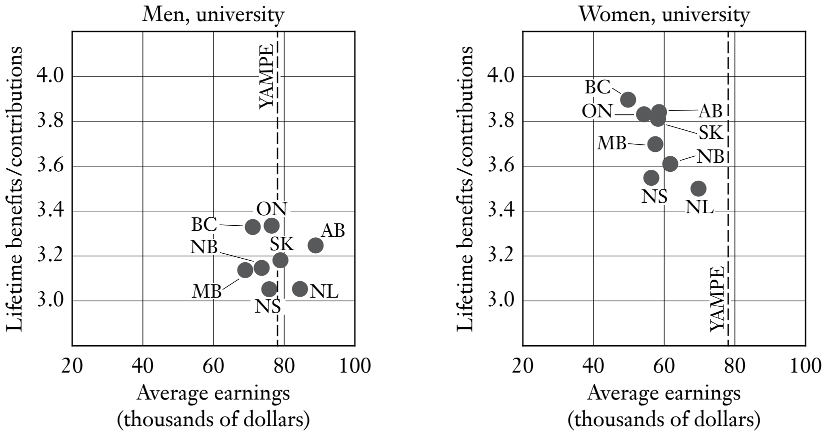


(The figure is concluded on the next page.)

that the cross-subsidization of CPP contributions among men, resulting from the low-earnings provisions, is minimal.

Overall, the enhanced CPP system is designed to ensure that one's benefits and contributions are closely related. Differences arise, however, reflecting the various cross-subsidies—within and across provinces—built into the system that are intended to support individuals' time in primary caregiver roles, subsidize the contributions that individuals cannot make during jobless periods, and offer longevity insurance by providing a defined benefit guarantee in retirement. Combined with OAS and GIS provisions, the federal system offers a foundation for many Canadians' retirement plans.

FIGURE 8 Concluded



BC = British Columbia; AB = Alberta; SK = Saskatchewan; MB = Manitoba; ON = Ontario; NB = New Brunswick; NS = Nova Scotia; NL = Newfoundland and Labrador.

CPP = Canada Pension Plan; YAMPE = year's additional maximum pensionable earnings.

Note: Quebec is omitted because most Quebec residents contribute to and benefit from the Quebec Pension Plan rather than the CPP. Prince Edward Island is omitted because survival probability estimates are available only for age intervals, so its results are not directly comparable with those for other provinces.

Source: Author's tabulations.

PROVINCIAL INCOME SUPPORT PROGRAMS FOR SENIORS

For low-income seniors, several provinces offer a top-up to federal income support programs. In those provinces that offer additional cash transfers, the benefits potentially depend on a senior's marital status, other income available, and whether the person is living in a seniors' residence or long-term-care facility. The maximum monthly benefits available to single seniors at age 65 (living in a private dwelling) are summarized in table 3.

The provincial benefits described table 3 are designed to top up the incomes of the lowest-income seniors, so seniors with even modest incomes are typically ineligible to receive any additional benefits. The maximum monthly benefit is highest in Saskatchewan, at $360 per month, but it is subject to a high clawback rate: the benefit is entirely clawed back if a senior's income reaches $380 per month (for example, from CPP). Manitoba's monthly benefit is lower, but the clawback rate is also lower; the benefit is reduced by 6.6 percent for every dollar of income, and phases out entirely once a senior's income reaches $812 per month.

Several provinces also offer broad support for services, even when direct income support is not available. For example, Quebec's financial assistance program for

TABLE 3 Provincial Income Support Programs for Single Seniors

Province	Cash transfers to seniors	Maximum monthly benefit	Clawback rate	Income considerations
British Columbia . . .	Senior's Supplement	$99.30	50%	Same as GIS
Alberta	Alberta Seniors Benefit	$316	16.60%	Exemptions include $3,600 of earnings and CPP death benefits
Saskatchewan	Seniors Income Plan	$360	95%	Same as GIS
Manitoba	55 PLUS Program	$53.93	6.60%	Same as GIS
Ontario	Guaranteed Annual Income System (GAINS)	$83	50%	Based on "private income"
Quebec	na	—	—	
New Brunswick	na	—	—	
Nova Scotia	na	—	—	
Prince Edward Island	na	—	—	
Newfoundland and Labrador	Newfoundland and Labrador Seniors' Benefit	$126	11.66%	Based on net income

GIS = guaranteed income supplement and related allowances; CPP = Canada Pension Plan.

na = not applicable.

Notes: This table shows the maximum monthly benefit for 2024 for unmarried seniors at age 65 who are living in a private dwelling (not a long-term-care facility), based on the most recent publicly available information. In some provinces, clawbacks and income considerations are not clearly reported or easily summarized. Where that is the case, the clawback is estimated on the basis of available information regarding the income required to reduce a benefit to zero. GIS income considerations for the calculation of benefits use line 23600 of the federal T1 tax form for annual net income, exempting $5,000 in employment income.

domestic help services is an income-tested benefit that helps to cover the hourly rate charged for domestic services such as housekeeping and meal preparation. Several provinces offer programs that help to cover the costs of prescription drugs or home-care services for seniors, with coverage rates that are income-tested.

MARGINAL EFFECTIVE TAX RATES FOR LOW-INCOME SENIORS

The federal and provincial income support programs discussed in the previous sections are designed to offer foundational retirement income support to seniors. The clawback rates described above—particularly for GIS and provincial support programs—are intended to ensure that the funds are well targeted to support low-income seniors. Among seniors, one might expect that the opportunity to work for wages is often limited by health constraints, especially at older ages. However, the capacity to work at older ages appears to have increased over time, and many seniors are able to work.[11] Before accepting employment, though, seniors should consider the extent to which earning a bit more income will reduce their federal and provincial benefits.

The existing literature describes the importance of the GIS clawback for the incentives to continue working at older ages. There are important interactions between GIS and CPP to consider here—for every year that a person postpones CPP takeup or continues working, the monthly CPP benefit will be higher for the rest of the person's lifetime. However, for every dollar of CPP income that is gained, 50 cents of GIS benefits will be lost. If the person lives in a province with other GIS top-ups, those benefits may be reduced as well. This results in an incentive for seniors who expect to be eligible for GIS and other supports to retire earlier rather than later.

More generally, we can think of the employment decisions of a low-income senior who has already retired. If she chooses to take up employment, she may not be eligible for some benefits. If wages earned exceed $5,000 per year, her GIS benefits will be reduced by 50 cents for every dollar earned. If the senior lives in Ontario, she may also lose 50 cents of her Ontario Guaranteed Annual Income System (GAINS) benefit for every dollar earned. When we account for the clawback of benefits from just GIS and GAINS alone, the METR on the extra dollar earned for an Ontario senior is already 100 percent. If we further consider any loss of services associated with an income test and personal income taxes paid on income earned, a senior's METR can easily exceed 100 percent.

The METRs for higher-income seniors are less affected by federal and provincial income support programs, since their high-income status implies that they are not eligible for benefits, and thus additional income is not subject to the programs' clawback rates. One exception is OAS, for which higher-income seniors' benefits are reduced by 15 cents for every dollar earned. (Note that the clawback is assessed on

11 For example, Kevin Milligan and Tammy Schirle, "Health and Capacity To Work of Older Canadians: Gender and Regional Dimensions" (2018) 44:2 *Canadian Public Policy* 159-72 (https://doi.org/10.3138/cpp.2017-028), estimate changes in the relationship between health capacity and work. They suggest that men between the ages of 55 and 69 could work five more years in order to keep pace with how men with the same health capacity worked in 1976, while women could work two more years, with important regional differences in health capacity at older ages.

an individual basis, unlike GIS, which is assessed on a family basis.) To avoid this, seniors can defer taking up OAS benefits to age 70, when seniors' employment income tends to be less than at age 65.

To the extent that seniors' labour supply may be more responsive to financial incentives than the labour supply of other workers, the potentially high METRs for low-income seniors described here should be of concern to policy makers. In response, provinces could consider measures that incentivize work at older ages. For example, Quebec introduced the tax credit for career extension, a non-refundable tax credit designed to function as a wage subsidy that lowers the METR applied to seniors' employment earnings, similar to the Canada workers benefit.[12] There has been discussion of introducing a similar tax credit at the federal level. The interaction of CPP and GIS (as well as other income-tested programs) may also be worthy of further consideration.

DISCUSSION

There are two key takeaways from this article. First, while the federal income support programs for seniors are applied equally to all seniors across the country, the importance of different provisions for the income received varies quite a lot across seniors. The available provisions in CPP for child rearing and periods of low earnings mean that some individuals get more out of the system, in terms of benefits, relative to their contributions. These small differences add up over one's lifetime, and even greater variations across individuals result from large differences in life expectancy. These provisions, however, may be thought of as being a kind of insurance whereby Canadians have agreed to support each other in covering the risk of earnings loss as a result of primary caregiving priorities or jobless periods, and protect each other against longevity risk in order to ensure sufficient income at the oldest ages. Second, by targeting support to low-income seniors, the available federal and provincial programs create high METRs that may disincentivize working at older ages. While some seniors may be limited for health reasons in their capacity to work at older ages, there is room to redesign policies in a way that would minimize work disincentives among those seniors who are able to work more in the interest of supplementing their private and public pension income in retirement.

12 The Quebec tax credit offers someone 65 years old in 2023 a 14 percent wage subsidy on earnings between $5,000 and $16,000, with the maximum benefit being clawed back at a rate of 5 percent on income over $38,945.

CANADIAN TAX JOURNAL / REVUE FISCALE CANADIENNE (2024) 72:3, 671-94
https://doi.org/10.32721/ctj.2024.72.3.ptp

Personal Tax Planning

Co-Editors: Chris Watt Bickley,* Sonia Gandhi,** Dino Infanti,***
and Bessy Triantafyllos****

GRIN AND BARE IT—THE RECENT KERFUFFLE OVER BARE TRUSTS

*Joel Nitikman******

The Income Tax Act has been amended to require bare trusts to file tax returns. This article explores the nature of a bare trust.

KEYWORDS: TRUSTS ■ TRUSTEES ■ AGENTS ■ AGENCY

CONTENTS

* Of Deloitte LLP, Ottawa (e-mail: cwattbickley@deloitte.ca).

** Of KPMG LLP, Toronto (e-mail: soniagandhi@kpmg.ca).

*** Of KPMG LLP, Vancouver (e-mail: dinfanti@kpmg.ca).

**** Of Deloitte LLP, Toronto (e-mail: btriantafyllos@deloitte.ca).

***** Of Dentons Canada LLP, Vancouver.

INTRODUCTION

The Canadian tax community has been all aflutter recently about bare trusts. This short article attempts to set out some thoughts on that topic.[1]

HISTORICAL TERMINOLOGY

The term "bare trust" is only the most recent one used to describe such trusts; originally, they were referred to as "naked trusts" or sometimes "simple trusts." Today, however, "bare trust" is the term used most commonly, although references are still made sometimes to the other terms.[2]

Bare trusts are not a new concept; naked trusts were referred to in decisions from at least 1677[3] and likely before that.

BARE TRUSTS UNDER THE INCOME TAX ACT

The term "bare trust" is not used in the text of the Income Tax Act[4] itself, although, as noted below, it is used now in one heading.

The Canada Revenue Agency (CRA) has acknowledged the concept of a bare trust for many years. On May 20, 1975, the CRA issued *Interpretation Bulletin* IT-216, "Corporation Holding Property as Agent for Shareholder," which stated:

> 1. A corporation may hold *in trust*, *as agent for a shareholder*, property that was acquired specifically to be held in this way. This situation, however, will only be accepted as a fact where there is an agreement or declaration of trust, entered into before or

1 This article does not deal with bare trusts in Quebec. See CRA document no. 2024-1006681E5, February 27, 2024, and note that that document does not refer to clause 248(3)(a)(i)(A) of the Income Tax Act, infra note 4. Members of the tax community are not the only ones fussed about the Canada Revenue Agency's treatment of bare trusts. On July 10, 2024, the Office of the Taxpayers' Ombudsperson, Mr. François Boileau, announced that it has "formally opened a systemic examination into whether the Canada Revenue Agency (CRA) respected taxpayers' rights in its administration of bare trust filing requirements for the 2023 tax year." Office of the Taxpayers' Ombudsperson, "Taxpayers' Ombudsperson Launches Systemic Examination into Canada Revenue Agency's 2023 Bare Trust Filing Requirements," *News Release*, July 10, 2024. See also the letter dated July 19, 2024 from the CBA/CPA Joint Committee on Taxation to the Tax Policy Branch of the Canadian Department of Finance suggesting changes to the new bare trust reporting rules discussed below.

2 See, for example, Mark Pawlowski and James Brown, "Trusts: What Is a Bare Trust?" [2020] no. 6 *Private Client Business* 295-99; and Canada Revenue Agency, *GST Policy Paper* P-015, "Treatment of Bare Trusts Under the Excise Tax Act," July 20, 1994.

3 See *Mr William Aikman v. John Aikman of Cairnie*, [1677] Mor 12281 (Scot. Ct. Sess.). The term was used also very early in US jurisprudence: see *The Bank of Columbia v. D. Ross* (1799), 4 H. & McH. 456, at 460 (MD CA).

4 RSC 1985, c. 1 (5th Supp.), as amended and proposed to be amended as of the date of writing (herein referred to as "the Act"). Unless otherwise stated, statutory references in this article are to the Act.

at the time the property was acquired, between the corporation and the shareholder, which clearly sets out the intention of the parties to the agreement and the degree of participation of the shareholder in the property so held in trust.

2. Where the foregoing is established to be the situation, the corporation will be looked upon *as merely an agent for the shareholder* who will be considered to be *the beneficial owner of the property*. As there has been no change in beneficial ownership, a transfer of property to a corporation by a shareholder subject to the above conditions would not constitute a disposition for purposes of computing a capital gain (or loss) or a recapture of capital cost allowances (or a terminal loss).

3. In so far as the shareholder is concerned, all the normal consequences of ownership of property will flow from the above arrangement. Any income or loss arising in respect of property, including any recaptured capital cost allowances or terminal losses, *while it is subject to the agency relationship* will be considered to be the income or loss of the shareholder regardless of whether or not any receipts have been transferred to the shareholder or, in the case of a loss, whether or not the corporation has been reimbursed.[5]

While IT-216 did not use the expression "bare trust," the bulletin was commonly understood by the tax community to refer to that idea.[6] The CRA did refer to bare trusts expressly at least as early as 1983.[7]

BARE TRUSTS AS AGENTS

IT-216 refers to a trust acting as an agent. But, in a 1988 round table, the CRA appeared to reverse course by announcing that subsection 104(1) (as it then read) applied to bare trusts. Specifically, the CRA stated:

Q.32 Bare Trust

The use of bare trusts has become common in many contexts, such as that in which a nominee corporation holds title to real estate for the beneficial owners, or a broker is the registered owner of shares belonging to a client. The common thread is that the holder of legal title has no discretionary powers and few, if any, administrative duties other than distributing receipts or acting on instructions. Please confirm that the beneficial owners are regarded as the owners of the property for tax purposes and *that the rules relating to trusts will not be applied to bare trusts*. There are inconsistencies in the department's position on this issue in question 24 of the 1979 round table and *Interpretation Bulletin* IT-216 (dated May 20, 1975).

---

5 *Interpretation Bulletin* IT-216, "Corporation Holding Property as Agent for Shareholder," May 20, 1975, at paragraphs 1-3 (emphasis added).

6 Thomas J. Weisz, "Some Implications of Holding Real Estate Through a Trust, a Partnership, a Tenancy-in-Common, or a Limited Partnership," in *Report of Proceedings of the Thirty-First Tax Conference*, 1979 Conference Report (Toronto: Canadian Tax Foundation, 1980), 728-50, at 729-31. The CRA confirmed that IT-216 referred to bare trusts in its 1991 announcement about its study of that concept. See below.

7 CRA document no. 7-2683, "Personal Use of Corporations Property," August 18, 1983.

> **Department's Position**
> We first note that *there is a legal distinction between an agency and a trust relationship*. Where there is an agency relationship, the beneficial owner of the property will be subject to income tax without regard to the agency relationship.
>
> *Where a bare trust exists under common law, subsections 104(1) and (2) of the Act will have application* because the transferor of the property transfers the common law legal ownership of the property to the trustee of the trust while retaining beneficial ownership thereof within the meaning of subparagraph 54(c)(v).[8] Consequently, it is our view that all relevant provisions of the Act are applicable to such a trust. Such trusts, being reversionary and revocable, will always be subject to the provisions of subsection 75(2), and as a result, all income and losses and capital gains and losses from the property will be attributable to the transferor.[9]

As noted by the question, this was not a new position: in 1979, the CRA said pretty much the same thing.[10]

In 1989, the CRA acknowledged the apparent confusion between the positions stated in its 1975 interpretation bulletin and in its 1979 and 1988 round table answers.[11] In 1991, the CRA announced that it was studying whether it was correct to treat a bare trust as an agent for the beneficiaries. The CRA stated:

> The issue of whether or not the settlor of a bare trust should be recognized for tax purposes as the owner of the trust property in a given situation is part of an ongoing study by the Department. Until such study is completed, a taxpayer may rely on the published positions in IT-216, IT-437 and ATR-1. That is, until the study is completed, the settlor will be treated as the owner of a property where the property is transferred to a bare trustee in circumstances comparable to those in our published positions.[12]

That study was completed in 1995 and the CRA adopted its 1975 IT-216 position formally. The CRA stated:

> Revenue Canada stated in a paper entitled "Bare Trusts" at the 1989 Corporate Management Tax Conference that, pending a review of our position, where property is held by a bare trust, *we will ignore the trust for income tax purposes* and will consider the transferor/settlor to be the owner of the property for all purposes of the Act.

8 See now paragraph (e) of the definition of "disposition" in subsection 248(1).

9 "Revenue Canada Round Table," in *Report of Proceedings of the Fortieth Tax Conference*, 1988 Conference Report (Toronto: Canadian Tax Foundation, 1989), 53:1-90, question 32, at 53:47-48 (emphasis added).

10 "Revenue Canada Round Table," in the 1979 Conference Report, supra note 6, 601-38, question 24, at 625.

11 "Revenue Canada Panel," in *Creative Tax Planning for Real Estate Transactions—Beyond Tax Reform and Into the 1990s*, 1989 Corporate Management Tax Conference (Toronto: Canadian Tax Foundation, 1989), 8:1-28, at 8:1-6.

12 CRA document no. 9102585, February 27, 1991.

> It was further stated that we generally view a bare trust to be a trust under common law when:
>
> - the trustee has no significant powers or responsibilities, and can take no action without instructions from the settlor;
> - the trustee's only function is to hold legal title to the property; and
> - the settlor is the sole beneficiary and can cause the property to revert to him or her at any time.
>
> Our review of this matter has been completed and *the above position remains unchanged*.[13]

A few observations on this statement are in order.

First, the first bullet point, in its reference to powers and responsibilities (duties), is too broad. As discussed below, a bare trust is defined by the absence of duties, not the presence of powers.

Second, the third bullet point, stating that a trust will be bare only when the settlor is the sole beneficiary, seems to be wrong. Nothing prevents one person from settling a bare trust for a different beneficiary.

Third, as mentioned below, there appears to be no reason why a bare trust must have a single beneficiary.[14]

SUBSECTION 104(1)

As noted above, in the 1988 round table the CRA said that subsection 104(1) would apply to bare trusts. Prior to 1998, subsection 104(1) stated simply that a reference to a trust meant a reference to the trustees thereof. In 2001, subsection 104(1) was amended, applicable to the 1998 and subsequent taxation years,[15] to exclude trusts that act as agents, so that it read as follows:

> 104(1) In this Act, a reference to a trust or estate (in this subdivision referred to as a "trust") shall, unless the context otherwise requires, be read to include a reference to the trustee, executor, administrator, liquidator of a succession, heir or other legal representative having ownership or control of the trust property, but, except for the purposes of this subsection, subsection (1.1), subparagraph (b)(v) of the definition "disposition" in subsection 248(1) and paragraph (k) of that definition, *a trust is deemed not to include*

---

13 Michael A. Hiltz, "Revenue Canada Review," in *Report of Proceedings of the Forty-Seventh Tax Conference*, 1995 Conference Report (Toronto: Canadian Tax Foundation, 1996), 52:1-12, at 52:4 (emphasis added).

14 See Maurice C. Cullity, "Personal Liability of Trustees and Rights of Indemnification" (1996) 16:2 *Estates and Trusts Journal* 115-43, at 118-19, defining bare trusts in terms of multiple beneficiaries rather than a single beneficiary. See, especially, ibid., at 120: "Revenue Canada's statement that a bare trust can have only one beneficiary is inconsistent with the decision in *Brookview Investments Ltd. v. M.N.R.* and it is unlikely that it is correct."

15 Income Tax Amendments Act, 2000, SC 2001, c. 17, section 78(1).

> *an arrangement under which the trust can reasonably be considered to act as agent for all the beneficiaries under the trust with respect to all dealings with all of the trust's property* unless the trust is described in any of paragraphs (a) to (e.1) of the definition "trust" in subsection 108(1) [emphasis added].

The amended subsection did not refer to bare trusts expressly. But the Department of Finance's explanatory notes to the amendment confirmed that that was what was intended:

> Subsection 104(1) is amended, in conjunction with 104(1.1), so that, except for the purposes of those two subsections, subparagraph (b)(v) of the definition "disposition" in subsection 248(1) and paragraph (k) of that definition, references in the Act to trusts are considered not to include an arrangement where a trust can reasonably be considered to act as agent for its beneficiaries with respect to all dealings in all of the trust's property. *These arrangements are generally known as "bare trusts."* Trusts described in paragraphs (a) to (e.1) of the definition "trust" in subsection 108(1) are expressly not affected by this amendment.[16]

RECENT CHANGES

The Fall Economic Statement Implementation Act, 2022[17] amended subsection 104(1), effective after December 30, 2023, to read as follows:

> 104(1) In this Act, a reference to a trust or estate (in this Subdivision referred to as a "trust") shall, unless the context otherwise requires, be read to include a reference to the trustee, executor, administrator, liquidator of a succession, heir or other legal representative having ownership or control of the trust property, but, except for the purposes of this subsection, subsection (1.1), *section 150* [emphasis added], subparagraph (b)(v) of the definition *disposition* in subsection 248(1) and paragraph (k) of that definition, a trust is deemed not to include an arrangement under which the trust can reasonably be considered to act as agent for all the beneficiaries under the trust with respect to all dealings with all of the trust's property unless the trust is described in any of paragraphs (a) to (e.1) of the definition *trust* in subsection 108(1).

SECTION 150

To understand why the "trust as agent" concept has been removed for the purposes of section 150, one must examine the recent amendments to that provision, which is what has set the tax community all abuzz recently.

Paragraph 150(1)(c) requires a trust to file a tax return within 90 days after the end of its taxation year:

16 Canada, Department of Finance, *Explanatory Notes Relating to Income Tax* (Ottawa: Department of Finance, March 2001), at 275-76 (emphasis added).

17 SC 2022, c. 19, section 13(1).

> 150(1) Subject to subsection (1.1), a return of income that is in prescribed form and that contains prescribed information shall be filed with the Minister, without notice or demand for the return, for each taxation year of a taxpayer, . . .
>
> (c) in the case of an estate or trust, within 90 days from the end of the year.

However, if the term "trust" does not include a bare trust, this provision would not apply and bare trusts would not have to file tax returns (although of course their principals, being the beneficiaries, would).

The Fall Economic Statement Implementation Act, 2022 added subsections 150(1.2) to (1.4) to the Act, applicable to taxation years ending after December 30, 2023.[18] In particular, new subsection 150(1.3) states:

> 150(1.3) For the purposes of this section, a trust includes an arrangement under which a trust can reasonably be considered to act as agent for all the beneficiaries under the trust with respect to all dealings with all of the trust's property.

Thus, a "trust" in paragraph 150(1)(c) now includes a trust that acts as an agent, which is generally understood to mean a bare trust, although that term is used only in the heading.[19]

Bare Trusts Filing Tax Returns

Trusts file T3 income tax returns. Trusts generally have a calendar taxation year.[20] Hence, the first T3s for bare trusts were due 90 days after December 31, 2023, or

18 Ibid., section 35(2).

19 In *Canada (Public Safety and Emergency Preparedness) v. Weldemariam*, 2024 FCA 69, at paragraph 96, the court said: "I recognize that in accordance with section 14 of the *Interpretation Act*, R.S.C., 1985, c. I-21, marginal notes and headings do not form part of a statute, and are inserted only for ease of reference. That said, it is nevertheless permissible to consider them as part of the interpretative process, although they may be accorded lesser weight than other interpretive aids: *Corbett v. Canada*, [1997] 1 F.C. 386 (F.C.A.), [1997] 1 C.T.C. 2 at para. 13." The Department of Finance's explanatory notes to subsection 150(1.3) refer to that subsection as dealing with "bare trusts": Canada, Department of Finance, *Explanatory Notes Relating to the Income Tax Act and Other Legislation* (Ottawa: Department of Finance, November 2022), accompanying the notice of ways and means motion introducing the Fall Economic Statement Implementation Act, 2022, supra note 17.

20 Paragraph 249(1)(c) applies for the purposes of persons other than corporations and testamentary trusts and hence applies to individuals. By subsection 104(2), a trust is treated as an individual in respect of its trust property. Hence, paragraph 249(1)(c) applies to inter vivos trusts and gives them a calendar taxation year. In CRA document no. 2024-1005851C6, May 7, 2024, the CRA repeated a view it has espoused before, that the taxation year of a trust continues to be the end of the calendar year even if the trust is dissolved during the year. Suffice it to say, I do not agree.

March 30, 2024, a Saturday.[21] The CRA announced that the deadline would be extended to April 2, 2024.[22]

On March 28, 2024, after many taxpayers and their advisers had spent significant time and money on preparing T3s for bare trusts or deciding whether their situation involved a bare trust or something else, the CRA announced that bare trusts were not required to file T3s for the 2023 taxation year. The CRA stated:

> To support ongoing efforts to ensure the effectiveness and integrity of Canada's tax system, the Government of Canada introduced new reporting requirements for trusts.
>
> In recognition that the new reporting requirements for bare trusts have had an unintended impact on Canadians, the Canada Revenue Agency (CRA) **will not require bare trusts to file a T3 *Income Tax and Information Return* (T3 return), including Schedule 15 (*Beneficial Ownership Information of a Trust*), for the 2023 tax year**, unless the CRA makes a direct request for these filings.[23]

A quick Google search will indicate that many people were frustrated by this late notice.

WHAT IS A BARE TRUST?

Thus far, we have not defined a bare trust.

First, we must understand what a trust is. Although no definition has yet been written that captures every variety or type of trust, the following definition is accepted widely as covering the vast majority of trusts:

21 The answer to the question of whether Saturday is a federal holiday is not as straightforward as one might think. The main portion of the definition of "holiday" in section 35(1) of the Interpretation Act, RSC 1985, c. I-21, as amended, does not include Saturday. But paragraph (a) of that definition includes any day that is a non-juridical day under provincial law. That is, any day on which courts are not open for business in a province is a "holiday" for federal purposes. So one must check not only provincial interpretation statutes but also the rules of court in each province and possibly other provincial laws before being able to say that Saturday is a holiday in any particular province. If it is, then by section 26 of the Interpretation Act, anything to be done on that day maybe done on the next day that is not a holiday. The CRA has issued a general announcement that it treats Saturday as a holiday in all provinces (www.canada.ca/en/revenue-agency/services/tax/public-holidays.html), although I suggest that one cannot depend on that announcement because there is no estoppel against the law.

22 Canada Revenue Agency, "New Reporting Requirements for Trusts and Bare Trusts: T3 Returns Filed for Tax Years Ending After December 30, 2023" (www.canada.ca/en/revenue-agency/services/tax/trust-administrators/t3-return/new-trust-reporting-requirements-t3-filed-tax-years-ending-december-2023.html#toc2).

23 Canada Revenue Agency, "New—Bare Trusts Are Exempt from Trust Reporting Requirements for 2023," March 28, 2024 (www.canada.ca/en/revenue-agency/news/newsroom/tax-tips/tax-tips-2024/bare-trusts-exempt-from-trust-reporting-requirements-2023.html). The announcement does not mention subsection 220(2.1), which provides that "[w]here any provision of this Act or a regulation requires a person to file a prescribed form, receipt or other document, or to provide prescribed information, the Minister may waive the requirement, but the person shall provide the document or information at the Minister's request."

> A trust is an equitable obligation, binding a person (who is called a trustee) to deal with property over which he has control (which is called the trust property), for the benefit of persons (who are called the beneficiaries or *cestuis que trust*), of whom he may himself be one, and any one of whom may enforce the obligation. Any act or neglect on the part of a trustee which is not authorised or excused by the terms of the trust instrument, or by law, is called a breach of trust.[24]

What, then, is a bare trust? Simply put, it is a trust where the trustee has no duties other than to hold title to the trust property during the trust's existence and to distribute that title to the beneficiary on demand. This definition (if one can call it that—"description" might be a better word) of a bare trust has been settled for hundreds of years. In *Christie v. Ovington*, Hall VC described a bare trustee as

> a trustee to whose office no duties were originally attached, or who, although such duties were originally attached to his office, would, on the requisition of his *cestuis que trust*, be compellable in equity to convey the estate to them, or by their direction, and has been requested by them so to convey it.[25]

Using essentially the same wording, the court in *Scoretz v. Kensam Enterprises Inc.*, a decision that is important for the reasons set out below, said:

> A person may hold property on behalf of another as a bare trustee without taking on all of the trappings of a fiduciary. A bare trustee has no further duty to perform except to convey the property to the beneficiary on demand, and to exercise reasonable care over the property. The authorities do not elucidate in any detail what obligations the trustee's fiduciary duty may encompass in this context, but any fiduciary duty is clearly limited.[26]

---

24 Underhill and Hayton, *Law of Trusts and Trustees*, various eds. (London: LexisNexis). This definition has been cited in many decisions. See, as one of many examples, *Alessandro v. The Queen*, 2007 TCC 411, at paragraph 62.

25 (1875), 1 Ch. D. 279, at 281 (HCJ). This quotation has been cited with approval in various Canadian tax and non-tax decisions. See, for example, *Nash v. Nash*, 2019 MBCA 31, at paragraph 27; *Mordo v. Nitting et al.*, 2006 BCSC 1761, at paragraphs 359-360; and *Collins v. The Queen*, [2002] TCJ no. 288, at paragraph 5.

26 2018 BCCA 66, at paragraph 23. The question of whether a bare trustee owes duties that are fiduciary in nature has not been resolved finally. It has been suggested that a bare trustee owes *no* fiduciary duties: *Financial Management Inc. v. Planidin*, 2006 ABCA 44, at paragraph 19. The court did not cite any authority for this proposition. In my view, it is not correct: see *Scoretz*, supra, at paragraphs 27-28. See also Paul Matthews, "All About Bare Trusts: Part 2" [2005] no. 6 *Private Client Business* 336, at 342-43, note 29 and accompanying text. In *Stewart v. 6551450 Manitoba Ltd. et al.*, 2023 MBCA 72, at paragraph 80, the court suggested that whether a bare trustee holds fiduciary duties depends on the particular facts of a case. To the same effect, see *Loeppky et al. v. Taylor McCaffrey LLP et al.*, 2023 MBCA 101, at paragraph 61. See also Albert Oosterhoff, Mitchell McInnes, and Robert Chambers, *Oosterhoff on Trusts*, 9th ed. (Toronto: Carswell, 2019), at 1102, note 19, suggesting that *Financial Management Inc.*, supra, was incorrect on this point.

How did the trustee come to have such limited duties? This may have occurred in one of several ways, including, inter alia, (1) the trust instrument (or the oral terms of the trust, if there was no written instrument) did not impose on the trustee any active duties beyond conveying the trust property to the beneficiary on demand; (2) the trustee had active duties pending certain conditions, but those conditions have now arrived, so the active duties have fallen away; (3) the bare trust exists by operation of law, such as a resulting[27] or constructive trust or a vendor's trust of real property sold to a purchaser where the sale has not yet been completed; or (4) a former trustee continues to hold trust property.[28]

It has been suggested that the modern concept of a bare trustee is slightly broader than that reflected in the two quotations above.[29] This is discussed in more detail below under the heading "Active Versus Passive Duties."

Absolute Interest?

It is sometimes said that a beneficiary must have an "absolute" interest in the trust property before there can be a bare trust.[30] In my view, this is a result rather than a condition of the definition of a bare trust. If the beneficiary can demand that the trustee distribute the trust property, it must be that the beneficiary is entitled absolutely to that property; otherwise, the trustee would have a duty to consider distributing the property to other beneficiaries or keeping it in the trust.

Multiple Beneficiaries?

Another issue is whether there can be more than one beneficiary in a bare trust. The thinking is that there cannot be, because if there is more than one, then no single beneficiary would have the absolute right to demand the trust property, which is the sine qua non of a bare trust. In my view, provided that all of the beneficiaries are entitled to the trust property absolutely, they could all demand the property and

27 As to whether a resulting trust can be a bare trust, see *Novosell v. Bolster*, 2022 ABKB 682, at paragraph 29.

28 As to whether a former trustee can continue to hold trust property, see *Park*, *in the matter of Queensland Nickel Pty Ltd (in liq) (No 3)*, [2022] FCA 1301, at paragraph 176; aff'd [2023] FCAFC 150, at paragraphs 174-83.

29 See *Collins*, supra note 25, at paragraph 5.

30 See, as one of many examples, *Bronson v. Hewitt*, 2010 BCSC 169, at paragraph 680; rev'd on other grounds 2013 BCCA 367. I suggest that the term "absolute" may have come from section 22(5) of the Finance Act 1965 (UK), 1965, c. 25, which used the phrase "absolutely entitled as against the trustee." In *Stephenson (HM Inspector of Taxes) v. Barclays Bank Trust Co. Ltd.*, [1975] 1 All ER 625, at 637 (Ch. D.), the court referred to that provision and to *Saunders v. Vautier* (1841), 41 ER 482 (Ch. D.) and said: "Now it is trite law that the persons who between them hold the entirety of the beneficial interests in any particular trust fund are as a body entitled to direct the trustees how that trust fund is to be dealt with, and this is obviously the legal territory from which that definition derives."

there would still be a bare trust. Indeed, the Supreme Court of Canada has stated that a bare trust may have multiple beneficiaries.[31]

Duties Versus Powers

It will be noted that the definition of a bare trust set out above concentrates on the limited *duties* of a trustee; no mention is made of its *powers*. As has been noted elsewhere, a trustee may have several powers in relation to the trust property, such as the power to insure the trust property or to invest the trust property, and yet still be a bare trustee.[32]

But is that really correct? There are in fact numerous authorities that suggest that a bare trustee must have not only limited duties but also substantially limited powers. In *Trident Holdings Ltd. v. Danand Investments Ltd.*,[33] the court quoted with approval the following passage from an article by Maurice Cullity in which he said:

> The distinguishing characteristic of the bare trust is that the trustee has no independent *powers*, discretions or responsibilities. His only responsibility is to carry out the instructions of his principals—the beneficiaries. If he does not have to accept instructions, if he has any significant independent powers or responsibilities, he is not a bare trustee.[34]

There is an Australian trial-level decision that held expressly that the presence of independent powers prevents a trust from being a bare trust, regardless of the absence of independent duties. The court concluded: "It seems to me that an 'active power' (as opposed to an 'active duty'), regardless of its significance, will be sufficient to render the trust something other than a bare trust."[35]

---

31 See *Valard Construction Ltd. v. Bird Construction Co.*, 2018 SCC 8, at paragraph 25. Paul Matthews, "All About Bare Trusts: Part 1" [2005] no. 5 *Private Client Business* 266, at 267, note 5, states that a bare trust may have more than one beneficiary. See also the discussion of *Trident*, infra note 33, in the text below under the heading "Ignoring the Bare Trust: Trident," where a corporation acted as bare trustee for six persons. I note that in September 2023 the CRA posted *Underused Housing Tax Notice* UHTN15, "Questions and Answers About the Underused Housing Tax" (www.canada.ca/en/revenue-agency/services/forms-publications/publications/uhtn15/questions-answers-underused-housing-tax.html). Paragraph 1.12 of the notice defines a bare trust by reference to "beneficiaries," as does the note in CRA form T4013, "T3 Trust Guide 2023." In fact, new subsection 150(1.3) specifically refers to a trust acting as agent for the "beneficiaries."

32 Matthews, "All About Bare Trusts: Part 2," supra note 26, at 343.

33 1988 CanLII 194 (ONCA).

34 Maurice C. Cullity, "Liability of Beneficiaries—A Rejoinder" (1985) 7:1 *Estates and Trusts Quarterly* 35-52, at 36 (emphasis added).

35 *ISPT Nominees Pty Ltd v. Chief Commissioner of State Revenue*, [2003] NSWSC 697, at paragraph 280, cited with approval in *Mercier Rouse Street Pty Ltd v. Burness*, [2015] VSCA 8, at paragraph 98. In my view, the court's conclusion in *ISPT* at paragraph 280 is directly contrary to the quotation set out in paragraph 279 from *Re Lashmar*, [1891] 1 Ch 258, at 269, per Fry LJ.

While it appears that this issue must be finally determined by a future appellate court or the Supreme Court of Canada, my view is that the modern authorities suggesting that an active or independent power prevents the trust from being a bare trust deviate from the historical definition of that concept and should not be accepted. Any trustee will have some powers—to take steps to safeguard the trust property, to sue for a breach of trust,[36] to file tax returns—all of which may be done without a beneficiary's instructions. To suggest that the presence of such powers prevents the trust from being "bare" automatically is to limit the concept of a bare trust to arrangements that eliminate those powers expressly in the trust deed. That does not appear to have ever been the intended limit of bare trusts.

Active Versus Passive Duties

When we speak of a bare trustee having limited duties, to what sort of duties are we referring? It appears that we mean duties set out expressly in the trust deed. That is, if the trust instrument itself does not impose any or only very limited duties to be performed by the trustee, with the principal duty being to deliver up the trust property to the beneficiary on demand, then it is a bare trust. The fact that the trustee may have what are called "passive" duties—that is, duties that are imposed on the trustee by trust law merely by virtue of their being a trustee—does not prevent the trust from being a bare trust.[37] *Waters' Law of Trusts* states:

> The usually accepted meaning of the term "bare," "naked" or "simple" trust is a trust where the trustee or trustees hold property without any duty to perform except to convey it to the beneficiary or beneficiaries upon demand. *It is true, of course, that so long as a trustee holds property on trust he or she has the duty to account for the property, keeping it secure and unharmed. The trustee cannot divest him- or herself of this duty*, and, if that is the trustee's sole duty, he or she must transfer that property to the beneficiary on demand. For example, a corporation may move assets such as accounts receivable off its books into a trust for itself, the trustee's sole obligation being to hold those assets secure. This is the situation where there never were active duties. Alternatively, a settlor may have required that a beneficiary be maintained until the beneficiary reaches the age of majority. Upon the occurrence of that event, the beneficiary is entitled to call for capital and income. This is the situation where once there were active duties, but they exist no more. The trustee is then bare, or naked, of active duties decreed by the settlor.
>
> If the trustee possesses his or her legal duties only for the purpose of guarding the property, prior to conveyance to the beneficiary, *those duties are said to be passive*.[38]

36 In *Centurion Apartment Properties Limited Partnership v. Sorenson Trilogy Engineering Ltd.*, 2024 BCCA 25, at paragraph 119, the court held that, even in the case of a bare trust, only the trustee and not the beneficiary can sue for breach of trust.

37 See Robert Flannigan, "Resolving the Status of the Bare Trust" (2019) 83:3 *Conveyancer and Property Lawyer* 207-26, at 208.

38 Donovan W.M. Waters, Lionel D. Smith, and Mark R. Gillen, *Waters' Law of Trusts in Canada*, 5th ed. (Toronto: Carswell, 2021), at chapter 2.VIII (emphasis added).

In *Collins*, the court noted that "[m]ore recent authorities allude to bare trustees having passive duties or non-management duties of an accounting or protective nature."[39] And an Australian decision noted that, "as a matter of strict logic, almost no situation can be postulated where a trustee cannot in some circumstances have active duties to perform."[40]

The quotation from *Waters' Law of Trusts* above has been cited with approval in Australia. In a decision there, after reviewing a number of authorities, the Court of Appeal summarized the rules for bare trusts as follows:

> The principles that can be drawn from *Herdegan*, *Corumo* and GCU *v One.Tel* are:
>
> (a) if the trustee has any active duties beyond those that exist by virtue of the office, they will not be a bare trustee;[41]
> (b) active duties *beyond those that exist by virtue of the office of trustee* include duties enumerated by the settlor, that is, duties enumerated in the terms of the trust;
> (c) an obvious and important duty that any trustee is to obey the terms of the trust; and
> (d) a duty to disburse funds in accordance with the terms of the trust is an active duty such that the trustee with that duty will not be a bare trustee.[42]

Thus, the "easy" way to determine whether a trust is a bare trust is to read the trust instrument. If it imposes significant duties on the trustee, the trust cannot be a bare trust. If it does not, if the only duty imposed on the trustee is to deliver the trust property on demand, then the trust is a bare trust.

Olympia

The question of whether a trustee has such limited duties that it may be called a bare trustee has not been litigated often, presumably because a reading of the trust deed will make it clear whether the trustee has bare or active duties. One case in which

39 Supra note 25, at paragraph 5.

40 *Corumo Holdings Pty Ltd v. C Itoh Ltd* (1991), 24 NSWLR 370, at 398 (CA), per Meagher JA. One example given was that of a trustee who holds shares of a corporation at the corporation's annual general meeting and who has not been instructed by the beneficiary on how to vote the shares.

41 It will be noted that there is no reference to powers. In Suhaylah Sequeira, "What Makes a Bare Trust Resident in Canada?" (2024) 14:3 *Canadian Tax Focus* 12-13, the author suggests that a bare trustee has no powers and hence a bare trust will be resident where the beneficiaries reside because it is they who control the trust. With respect, I disagree with the premise. A bare trustee can have powers and the bare trust may be resident where it exercises those powers, but whether the trustee is exercising its powers on its own or at the beneficiaries' directions, and whether the trustee is exercising powers of sufficient importance to affect the trust's residence, are questions of fact that can be answered only in the circumstances of each individual trust.

42 *Queensland Nickel Pty Ltd (in liq) v. QNI Metals Ltd*, [2021] QCA 138, at paragraph 56 (emphasis added).

the issue did arise was *Olympia Trust Company v. Canada*.[43] Olympia was the trustee of a trust that governed a registered retirement savings plan (RRSP). The RRSP (that is to say, Olympia as trustee of the trust) purchased certain property from a non-resident of Canada but did not withhold or remit any portion of the purchase price as (allegedly) required by subsection 116(3). Olympia argued, among other things, that the trust was a bare trust and hence the annuitant under the RRSP, rather than Olympia, was the true purchaser. The court rejected that argument and held that the trustee had powers that were significant enough to create an active rather than a bare trust:

> For the sake of completeness, I note that in its factum the appellant asserted that the RRSP Trusts were "bare trusts" with the result that they should essentially be ignored for the purposes of the Act. In my view, this assertion is unpersuasive. First, *Olympia as trustee of the RRSP Trusts has meaningful powers and responsibilities*. In particular, it is clear that while the annuitants have "self-direction" rights, *Olympia has the power to countermand directions to sell trust property*. In addition, Olympia is responsible for tax reporting and withholding obligations in respect of such trusts. Finally, each RRSP Trust has a beneficiary other than its annuitant. *These factors are sufficient to negate the "bare trust" assertion*.[44]

In light of the definition of a bare trust set out above, it appears that only the first of the reasons cited by the court in *Olympia* was relevant to the issue of whether the trust was a bare trust. The fact that the trustee had to file the tax return and the fact that there was more than one beneficiary were wrong and irrelevant, in that order. In the absence of new subsection 150(1.3) and newly amended subsection 104(1), a bare trustee did not at that time need to file a tax return. And the fact that there is more than one beneficiary says nothing about the extent of the trustee's duties.

Last, the court's reasoning that the right to ignore orders to sell assets out of the RRSP negates a finding of bare trust is not correct: the very essence of a bare trust is that the trustee must obey the beneficiary's order to distribute the property. The fact that the beneficiary may not order the trustee to *sell* the property is beside the point. In a self-directed RRSP, it seems likely that the trustee could not refuse to collapse the RRSP and distribute all the trust property to the annuitant. Whether Olympia had any other active *duties* is not disclosed in the Court of Appeal's reasons.

MORE ABOUT AGENCY

The CRA appears to equate a bare trust with agency. That is, it appears to view a bare trust as being an agent for the beneficiaries automatically. Perhaps the CRA's position is derived from the way subsection 104(1) (and now subsection 150(1.3)) is worded, or perhaps those provisions are worded as they are because of the CRA's position, but whatever the cause, it is not correct.

43 2015 FCA 279.

44 Ibid., at paragraph 76 (emphasis added).

The fundamental principle of agency is that the principal can direct the activities of the agent because there is a contract between them. A trust is not a contract, so a bare trust cannot be an agent merely by virtue of being a bare trust. Something more must be required. As noted by Matthews, "the bare trustee has no general power of agency on behalf of the beneficiary."[45] In categorizing various bare trust arrangements, Matthews states:

> Third is the case of a bare trust (sense 1)[46] plus agency-type agreement, where the trustee holds on trust for the beneficiary absolutely, but also agrees to do either whatever the settlor/principal asks, or at least whatever is asked within a certain range of possibilities. An example of such a case is a unit trust (in the United States called a mutual fund). This is also commonly called a nomineeship, except that, unlike the first category mentioned above, here the nominee has the legal title to the assets concerned. Some writers do not distinguish this case from the bare trust, holding that a bare trustee "is a nominee having to follow the instructions of the beneficiary." *In the writer's view a bare trustee (sense 1) is less than that*, and indeed there are judicial dicta distinguishing the two concepts.[47]

In *Scoretz*,[48] the court confirmed that a bare trust is not an agent automatically. The court held that if a beneficiary does not have sufficient control over the trustee's actions (which, although the court did not say so, would have to arise by contract), then a bare trustee is not an agent.[49]

As it happens, however, in many if not most cases, documents that establish bare trusts go on to say that the bare trustee is also a nominee and/or an agent of the beneficiary. Thus, in many cases, the bare trustee will in fact be an agent contractually, and subsection 104(1) will apply (but the agency will be ignored under subsection 150(1.3)).

IGNORING THE BARE TRUST: TRIDENT

Because of subsection 104(1), and apart from subsection 150(1.3), where a bare trustee is also an agent, the Act's provisions dealing with trusts do not apply. The effect is that the bare trust is ignored and the beneficiary/principal is treated as the owner of the trust property, with all attendant income tax consequences.

---

45 Matthews, "All About Bare Trusts: Part 2," supra note 26, at 343.

46 Sense 1 as used by Matthews is the sense in which bare trusts have been defined above. His "sense 2" is based on certain UK decisions interpreting various statutes using the term "bare trust" and is not discussed much by him and not at all in this article.

47 Matthews, "All About Bare Trusts: Part 1," supra note 31, at 267 (emphasis added). See also Peter G. Watts, *Bowstead & Reynolds on Agency*, 23d ed. (London: Sweet & Maxwell, 2023), at section 1-032: "it does not follow that all bare trustees are agents."

48 Supra note 26.

49 Ibid., at paragraph 36.

By far the most famous case in Canada regarding the interaction of the trust aspect of a bare trust with the agency aspect (if there is one) is *Trident Holdings v. Danand Investments*.[50] Trident submitted a proposal for the supply and installation of electrical equipment for Danand's development. Danand held title to the property as bare trustee for others. Trident sued Danand and the others for breach of contract. The trial judge awarded damages against the defendants and directed that the judgment be enforceable against Danand's interest in the land.

The beneficiaries of the bare trust argued that beneficiaries are not liable contractually for contracts entered into by their trustee. The Court of Appeal agreed with that as a general principle but held that, under the bare trust agreement, Danand had the power to execute contracts binding on the "beneficiaries" and hence they were liable personally. Danand was not only a bare trustee of but also an agent for the beneficiaries. Moreover, the agency relationship predominated. The court held that an agency relationship can exist contemporaneously with a bare trust and result in liability to the principals, even though as beneficiaries they would have no contractual liability.

In so holding, the Court of Appeal cited with approval an article by (now former justice) Maurice Cullity in which he said:

> It is quite clear that in many situations trustees will also be agents. This occurs, for example, in the familiar case of investments held by an investment dealer as nominee or in the case of land held by a nominee corporation. In such cases, the trust relationship that arises by virtue of the separation of legal and equitable ownership is often described as a bare trust and *for tax* and some other purposes *it is quite understandably ignored*.[51]

Cullity does not explain *why* bare trusts as agents are "quite understandably ignored" for tax purposes. I suggest the reason is this: a trustee contracts personally for any engagements it enters into qua trustee. As regards the outside world, the trustee is the sole, absolute owner of the trust property and is contracting on its own behalf. Beneficiaries are not liable under a trustee's contract. But if the trustee is also an agent, it is not liable and the beneficiaries/principals are. As regards the outside world, the agent does not exist. It cannot be both: either the beneficiaries/principals are liable or they are not; either they own the trust property or they do not. If the beneficiaries are liable and they do own the property as principals of an agent, it is impossible to say that they do not, on the basis that they are "only" beneficiaries of a trust. And having agreed to be principals while knowing that they are beneficiaries, the principals could hardly say that they never intended the agency to predominate over the bare trust. Obviously they did, or they never would have agreed to be principals. It is appropriate, therefore, to ignore the trust and to treat the beneficiaries as the owners of the trust property, with all attendant tax consequences, because that is the very status to which they agreed.

---

50 Supra note 33.

51 Cullity, supra note 34, at 36 (emphasis added).

Trident has been cited with approval by many other cases (including, indirectly, by the Supreme Court of Canada) for the proposition that a bare trust that is an agent should be ignored for tax purposes.[52]

It is important to note that the idea of "ignoring" the trust in favour of the agency relationship does not mean that the trust does not exist. It means simply that, for tax and some other purposes, the trustee is to be regarded as an agent rather than as a trustee. In *0956375 BC Ltd. v. Regional District of Okanagan-Similkameen*, the court stated:

> It is, in my view, important to note that in *Trident*, the Court did not hold that a bare trust created only an agency relationship. To the contrary, the Court held that in such circumstances there could be both a trust relationship and an agency relationship.[53]

However, the court went on to cite with approval from an earlier edition of *Waters' Law of Trusts* to the following effect:

> Even where there is a very clearly expressed intention to form a trust relationship there may be situations where the relationship could also be characterized as one of agency. It has been argued that the greater degree of control the beneficiaries of a trust have over the management of the trust assets, the greater the likelihood that the relationship could also be characterized as agency. *The consequence of this is that the trustees will be treated as agents and the beneficiaries will be treated as principals.*[54]

---

52 The most recent tax case as of the date of writing is *1084204 BC Ltd. v. His Majesty the King in Right of British Columbia*, 2023 BCSC 2013, at paragraphs 35-36 (under appeal to the BC Court of Appeal) (a BC Property Transfer Tax Act case in which I was counsel to 1084204 BC Ltd.). As noted at paragraph 36 of this decision, in *Canada (Attorney General) v. British Columbia Investment Management Corp*., 2019 SCC 63, at paragraph 61, the court cited with approval *De Mond Jr. v. The Queen*, 1999 CanLII 466 (TCC), which itself at paragraph 37 cited *Trident*. Hence, I say that the Supreme Court of Canada has cited *Trident* indirectly with approval.

53 2020 BCSC 743, at paragraph 78.

54 Ibid., at paragraph 81, quoting Donovan W.M. Waters, Lionel D. Smith, and Mark R. Gillen, *Waters' Law of Trusts in Canada*, 4th ed. (Toronto: Carswell, 2012), at section 3.III.D.1 (emphasis added). Flannigan, supra note 37, at 210 reiterates this point as follows: "There is a duality of trustee and agent accountability. Bare trustees, whether or not they are controlled, are liable as trustees for actions that breach in some respect the narrow trust dimension of their function/duty of effectively holding and maintaining the legal estate. *If they are controlled in their trust function, however, they will concurrently assume agent status*, and thereby as agents render the settlors or beneficiaries who direct them liable to third parties injured by their actions. That is, controlled bare trustees will be accountable according to which of their dual capacities as trustee or agent is triggered by their actions. Accordingly, it is wrong to assume that a controlled trustee is a distinct kind of trustee (a *sui generis* amalgam of trust and agency) subject to rules that differ from the rules applicable to other trustees. A controlled trustee has a 'trust' dimension that attracts ordinary trust law rules that apply where the issue at hand concerns the preservation or disposition of the property, and a separate 'agency' dimension that attracts the ordinary agency rules that apply to interactions with third parties [emphasis added]."

Finally, the court concluded as follows:

> I accept *Trident* and *Advanced Glazing* as authority for the proposition that a bare trustee, such as 447857, can also be an agent for the beneficiaries of the trust. These cases establish that *the agency relationship has precedence* where a breach of contract or a negligent misrepresentation is committed by the trustee/agent while acting under the directions of the beneficiary/principal. In such circumstances, the beneficiary/principal is liable for the breach of contract or negligent misrepresentation committed by the trustee/agent.[55]

THE TRUSTEE'S LIEN

While a bare trust is defined as a trust where the trustee has no express duties to perform other than to deliver the trust property to the beneficiaries on demand, some discussion is required as to whether the beneficiaries can ever have such a right.

As almost everyone knows, a trust is a type of legal relationship rather than a legal entity with a separate legal personality. This means that, whatever the trustee does, it does in its personal capacity, even though it is acting in the course of the trust's business. As the Privy Council said, "The legal personality of a trustee is unitary."[56]

Because the trustee is acting personally, it is liable personally for anything it does, even though it does it qua trustee.[57] Very few people would agree to undertake such a liability and trusts would disappear if there were not some way of offsetting that risk. Equity's answer is to provide the trustee with two rights: a right of *indemnification*, which permits the trustee to make a claim against the trust for reimbursement of any expense that the trustee incurred reasonably in the course of its trust duties,[58] and a right of *exoneration*, which permits the trustee to make a claim against the trust to pay the expense up front without the trustee having to pay it first.[59]

55 *0956375 BC Ltd.*, supra note 53, at paragraph 82 (emphasis added). As noted above, in *Scoretz*, supra note 26, the court held that not all bare trusts are agents. In *0956375 BC Ltd.*, at paragraph 83, the court confirmed this (although strangely without citing *Scoretz*, a binding BC Court of Appeal decision): "However, neither *Trident* nor *Advanced Glazing* go so far as to establish that *in all circumstances* the relationship established by a bare trust is one of agency as opposed to trust or that agency principles will always predominate to the exclusion of the trust principles [emphasis added by the court]."

56 *Investec Trust (Guernsey) Ltd & Anor v Glenalla Properties Ltd & Ors*, [2018] UKPC 7, at paragraph 59, subparagraph (iii).

57 A trustee can escape personal liability on a contract if the other party agrees expressly to look only to the trust assets for payment of any contractual liability.

58 If the trust has insufficient assets, the trustee may in some cases make a claim against the beneficiaries for reimbursement.

59 It is not clear whether a trustee could make a claim for exoneration against a beneficiary. In policy terms one would think it could, but there is no authority one way or the other on this point.

A full discussion of these rights is beyond the scope of this article.[60] What is important is that, to secure its rights, equity provides the trustee with an equitable lien over the trust's assets. This lien is proprietary, in the sense that it is an in rem claim against the assets themselves and not merely an in personam claim against the beneficiaries. Moreover, the lien takes first priority over all other claims against the trust's assets.[61]

Accordingly, unless the trust instrument eliminates the lien expressly, which would be very odd, no beneficiary has an unfettered right to demand delivery of the trust assets, regardless of what the trust instrument says. The trustee always has the right to withhold sufficient assets to cover its expenses.

Thus, when we speak of a bare trust being a trust where the beneficiaries can demand and the trustee must give up the trust property, it is understood that this is subject to the trustee's lien. That does not prevent the trust from being a bare trust. If it did, a bare trust could almost never exist.

CONCLUSION

The concept of a bare trust does not seem to be particularly difficult: it is a trust where the trustee has no active duties except to safeguard the trust property and to deliver it to the beneficiaries on demand. The trustee may have some limited passive duties or various powers, or both, and yet still be a bare trustee.

A bare trustee may be also, but is not necessarily, an agent for the beneficiaries, provided that there is a contract giving them sufficient control over the trustee to create an agency relationship.

If the bare trustee is also an agent, then, in the absence of any facts indicating the contrary, the agency aspect of the relationship predominates and the trust is ignored for tax (and some other) purposes.

POSTSCRIPT

On August 12, 2024, after this article was written and prepared for publication, the minister of finance released draft legislation to make various technical amendments to the Act.[62] Explanatory notes to the draft legislation were released shortly thereafter.[63]

60 For a recent discussion, see Mitchell McInnes, "Unjust Enrichment and Trusts: Restitution and Indemnification in Law and Equity" (2023) 42:2 *Estates, Trusts & Pensions Journal* 108-39.

61 A full analysis of the nature of the lien is contained in *Equity Trust (Jersey) Ltd v. Halabi (Jersey)*, [2022] UKPC 36.

62 Canada, Department of Finance, *Legislative Proposals Relating to the Income Tax Act and the Income Tax Regulations* (Technical Amendments) (Ottawa: Department of Finance, August 2024) (herein referred to as "the draft legislation").

63 Canada, Department of Finance, *Explanatory Notes to Legislative Proposals Relating to the Income Tax Act and Regulations* (Technical Amendments) (Ottawa: Department of Finance, August 2024) (herein referred to as "the explanatory notes").

Under section 12 of the draft legislation, effective for taxation years ending December 30, 2024, subsection 104(1) is repealed and replaced with the following:

> 104(1) In this Act, a reference to a trust or estate (in this Subdivision referred to as a "trust") shall, unless the context otherwise requires, be read to include a reference to the trustee, executor, administrator, liquidator of a succession, heir or other legal representative having ownership or control of the trust property, but, except for the purposes of this subsection, subsection (1.1), subparagraph (b)(v) of the definition *disposition* in subsection 248(1) and paragraph (k) of that definition, a trust is deemed not to include an arrangement under which the trust can reasonably be considered to act as agent for all the beneficiaries under the trust with respect to all dealings with all of the trust's property unless the trust is described in any of paragraphs (a) to (e.1) of the definition *trust* in subsection 108(1).

It will be noted that, unlike the version of subsection 104(1) that this version replaces, there is no mention of section 150. Thus, if one stopped there, the current rule that bare trusts need not file returns would continue. The explanatory note to this section confirms that the intention is to capture bare trusts.[64] It states:

> Subsection 104(1) currently provides that, except for the purposes of certain specified provisions, references in the Act to trusts are considered not to include an arrangement where a trust can reasonably be considered to act as agent for its beneficiaries with respect to all dealings in all of the trust's property. These arrangements are generally known as "bare trusts." . . .
>
> Subsection 104(1) is amended to remove the reference to section 150. As such, beneficial ownership arrangements that are not otherwise treated as trusts for the purposes of the Act will only be subject to the beneficial ownership reporting requirements if they are deemed to be trusts under new subsection 150(1.3).[65]

However, as this note indicates, that is not the whole story. Subsection 150(1.1) continues to say that an individual (which includes an inter vivos trust) need not file a return under subsection 150(1) (including especially paragraph 150(1)(c)) unless certain conditions apply. That subsection remains subject to subsection 150(1.2).

Section 34(2) of the draft legislation revises subsection 150(1.2). As revised, subsection 150(1.1) does not apply to the undefined term "express trusts" (so that

64 It is beyond the scope of this article to discuss this point, but readers who live in provinces that have not repealed the Statute of Uses, 27 Hen. 8, c. 10, may consider whether it is even possible to have a bare trust or whether the trust would be deemed to be executed, so that the beneficiary would own not only the equitable estate but also the legal estate in any trust property as well as legal title thereto. See *R v. Shon Yee Benevolent Association of Canada*, 1991 CanLII 2291 (BCSC), at paragraph 21.

65 Supra note 63, at clause 12.

paragraph 150(1)(c) does apply to such trusts), unless one of the exceptions in revised subsection 150(1.2) applies. These exceptions include:

- the trust existing for fewer than three months at the end of the taxation year (paragraph 150(1.2)(a));
- a trust the trustees of which are individuals, the beneficiaries of which are related to each trustee, and the assets of which are not worth more than $250,000 throughout the year[66] and which consist of nothing other than a long list of assets such as cash, guaranteed investment certificates, or various debts, public company shares, and mutual funds (but not shares of a private corporation) (proposed paragraph 150(1.2)(b.1));
- a trust that is required under the relevant rules of professional conduct or the laws of Canada or a province (but not a territory) to hold funds for the purposes of an activity that is regulated under those rules or laws, provided that (a) the trust is not maintained as a separate trust for a particular client or clients or (b) the only assets held by the trust throughout the year are money with a value that does not exceed $250,000 (revised paragraph 150(1.2)(c)); or
- a trust that is established for the purpose of complying with a statute of Canada or a province (but not a territory) that requires the person or persons acting as trustee of the trust to hold property in trust for a specified purpose (proposed paragraph 150(1.2)(q)).

Under section 34(4) of the draft legislation, subsection 150(1.3) as discussed in the main part of this article is repealed. By section 34(6), the repeal is effective for taxation years ending after December 30, 2024. As inter vivos trusts have calendar-year taxation years, the repeal is effective for all of 2024.[67] It was ordered by the minister of national revenue not to be effective for 2023. This means, in effect, that subsection 150(1.3) was never really in force.

Under section 34(5) of the draft legislation, a new subsection 150(1.3) is enacted (by section 34(7), effective for taxation years that end after December 30, 2025—so, for the 2025 calendar year). Under new subsection 150(1.3), the term "express trust" is deemed to include a particular arrangement (and hence the deemed trust will come within subsection 150(1.2), which applies to express trusts and hence the deemed trust will not be within subsection 150(1.1) and hence the deemed trust will be required to file returns under paragraph 150(1)(c)) if certain conditions are met.

66 Query how one is to monitor the values of public company shares or mutual funds second by second throughout the year to ensure that they don't breach the $250,000 limit.

67 Confirmed by the explanatory note to this subsection, supra note 63, at clause 34: "The amendment to repeal subsection 150(1.3) applies to taxation years that end after December 30, 2024. This means that 'bare trusts' will not be required to file returns for taxation years ending on December 31, 2024."

The explanatory notes state that the purpose of this new deeming rule is to better define "bare trusts" using the traditional equitable division between legal and equitable title to property:

> Subsection 150(1.3) is replaced with new wording to provide greater certainty and to effectively define what constitutes a "bare trust" for the purposes of the beneficial ownership reporting requirements. This new subsection relies upon the existing trust concept of the division of legal and beneficial ownership and is intended, subject to the exceptions in subsection 150(1.31), to capture those arrangements that would normally constitute a bare trust. This change, together with the exceptions in new 150(1.31), is intended to provide more clarity on the arrangements that are subject to the reporting rules.[68]

If the arrangement is deemed to be an express trust, the legal owner of the property is deemed to be a trustee of that trust and the persons or partnerships entitled to the use or benefit of the property[69] held under the deemed express trust are deemed to be beneficiaries of the deemed trust:

> 150(1.3) For the purpose of this section and section 204.2 of the *Income Tax Regulations*,
> (a) an express trust is deemed to include any arrangement under which
> (i) one or more persons (in this subsection and subsection (1.31) referred to as a "legal owner") have legal ownership of property that is held for the use of, or benefit of, one or more persons or partnerships, and
> (ii) the legal owner can reasonably be considered to act as agent for the persons or partnerships who have the use of, or benefit of, the property;
> (b) each person that is a legal owner of an arrangement that is described under paragraph (a) is deemed to be a trustee of the trust; and
> (c) each person or partnership that has the use or benefit of property under an arrangement that is described under paragraph (a) is deemed to be a beneficiary of the trust.

One notes several points on a first reading of the new subsection. First, the property held for the use or benefit of the deemed beneficiaries is not deemed to be trust property. Query whether this meets the requirement that an express trust must have "certainty of property."

68 Ibid. This article is not the place to do so, but one could question the explanatory note's use of the term "beneficial ownership" in this context. That term is difficult to define and likely does not apply in the sense in which the explanatory note uses it in many trust arrangements. The term "equitable interests" probably would have been more accurate.

69 It is curious that the legislation distinguishes between "use" and "benefit." It is hard to understand how one could have the use of property without having the benefit of it. Perhaps the distinction was for greater certainty.

Second, "partnerships" are treated as something more than a collection of persons, which is odd, because this provision has nothing to do with the calculation of the partnership's income, so the partnership is not treated as if it were a separate person under subsection 96(1).

Third, the described agency arrangement is "included" as an express trust, suggesting that express trusts might include other agency-type arrangements.

Last, the marginal note to proposed subsection 150(1.3) no longer refers to a "bare trust" but now says "deemed trust." Perhaps we need to coin a new term and refer to "agency trusts" rather than "bare trusts."

The language of proposed subparagraph 150(1.3)(a)(ii), like that of subsection 104(1), is curious. It says that it applies when the legal owner "can reasonably be considered" to act as an agent. As discussed in the main part of this article, agency will arise only when the principal has control over the agent's actions through a contractual agreement (or in certain implied agency arrangements). It is not clear how someone could "reasonably be considered to be" an agent without actually being an agent.

One cannot have a rule without having an exception to it. Accordingly, proposed subsection 150(1.31) sets out a long list of situations where subsection 150(1.3) does not apply. For example, all the beneficiaries are also trustees and no trustee is not also a beneficiary (proposed paragraph 150(1.31)(a));[70] the trustees are individuals related to each other and the property is real property that is the principal residence of one or more of them (proposed paragraph 150(1.31)(b));[71] or the legal owner is an individual and the property is real property that (a) is held for the use of, or the benefit of, the legal owner's spouse or common-law partner during the year and (b) would be the legal owner's principal residence for the year if the legal owner had designated the property for the year under the definition "principal residence" in section 54.[72]

No doubt the Department of Finance will be inundated with suggestions for other exceptions.

The long and short of the draft legislation is that, subject to numerous exceptions, trusts that act as agents must file income tax returns for the 2025 and subsequent taxation years. Taxpayers and their advisers now have just under 18 months to determine whether this legislation applies to them. As the explanatory notes say:

> The amendment to add the new version of subsection 150(1.3) applies to taxation years that end after December 30, 2025. Accordingly, it would first be applicable to taxation years that end on December 31, 2025. This is intended to allow taxpayers and their

70 According to the explanatory notes, this provision is aimed at joint bank accounts.

71 This provision is aimed at situations where a parent is on title to allow a child to obtain a mortgage.

72 This provision is aimed at situations where spouses jointly occupy a family home, but only one spouse is on title.

advisors sufficient time to consider their circumstances in light of new subsections 150(1.3) and (1.31).[73]

One can only hope that turns out to be true.[74]

73 Supra note 63, at clause 34.

74 The draft legislation also revises the Income Tax Regulations concerning additional filing requirements for trusts. Under current regulation 204.2(1), trusts (except those listed in subsection 150(1.2)) that must file an income tax return must also file additional information, including the name, address, date of birth, jurisdiction of residence, and taxpayer identification number for all the trustees, beneficiaries, and settlors (as defined in subsection 17(15)) of the trust (and for certain influencers, such as protectors). Regulation 204.2(1) is amended so that trusts (other than those listed in subsection 150(1.2)) that must file a tax return must also file prescribed beneficial ownership information of the trust. The revised regulation now applies to a partnership that is a beneficiary. New regulation 204.2(3) provides a new definition of "settlor" as being any person or partnership that has directly or indirectly, in any manner whatever, transferred property to the trust, other than a transfer made by the person or partnership to the trust for fair market value consideration or pursuant to a legal obligation to make the transfer.

CANADIAN TAX JOURNAL / REVUE FISCALE CANADIENNE (2024) 72:3, 695-722
https://doi.org/10.32721/ctj.2024.72.3.pfp

Planification fiscale personnelle

Corédacteurs de chronique : Chris Watt Bickley*, Sonia Gandhi**, Dino Infanti*** et Bessy Triantafyllos****

RÉCENT BROUHAHA AUTOUR DES SIMPLES FIDUCIES — UN CONCEPT PEUT-ÊTRE PAS SI SIMPLE

*Joel Nitikman******

La Loi de l'impôt sur le revenu a été modifiée afin d'exiger des simples fiducies qu'elles produisent des déclarations de revenus. Le présent article explore la nature de la simple fiducie.

MOTS CLÉS : FIDUCIES ■ FIDUCIAIRES ■ MANDATAIRES ■ MANDAT

SOMMAIRE

* De Deloitte S.E.N.R.L., s.r.l., Ottawa (courriel : cwattbickley@deloitte.ca).

** De KPMG S.E.N.C.R.L., s.r.l., Toronto (courriel : soniagandhi@kpmg.ca).

*** De KPMG S.E.N.C.R.L., s.r.l., Vancouver (courriel : dinfanti@kpmg.ca).

**** De Deloitte S.E.N.R.L., s.r.l., Toronto (courriel : btriantafyllos@deloitte.ca).

***** De Dentons Canada LLP, Vancouver.

INTRODUCTION

La communauté fiscale canadienne s'est récemment enflammée au sujet des simples fiducies. Ce court article propose quelques réflexions sur le sujet[1].

ÉVOLUTION DE LA TERMINOLOGIE

Le terme « simple fiducie » (*bare trust*) est le terme le plus récent utilisé pour décrire ce type de fiducie; à l'origine, on parlait de « fiducie nue » ou « nue(-) fiducie » (*naked trust*) ou « fiducie simple » (*simple trust*). Aujourd'hui, cependant, « simple fiducie » est le terme le plus souvent utilisé, même si on trouve parfois des références aux autres termes[2].

La simple fiducie n'est pas un nouveau concept; on fait référence à la fiducie nue dans des arrêts datant d'au moins 1677[3] et probablement avant.

1 Cet article ne traite pas des simples fiducies au Québec. Voir le document de l'ARC nº 2024-1006681E5, 27 février 2024. Il est à remarquer que ce document ne fait pas référence à la division 248(3)a)(i)(A) de la Loi de l'impôt sur le revenu, infra, note 4. Les membres de la communauté fiscale ne sont pas les seuls à s'inquiéter du traitement des simples fiducies par l'Agence du revenu du Canada. Le 10 juillet 2024, l'ombudsman des contribuables, Mᵉ François Boileau, a annoncé avoir « officiellement lancé un examen systémique visant à déterminer si l'Agence du revenu du Canada (l'Agence) a respecté les droits des contribuables dans le cadre de l'administration des exigences de production des simples fiducies pour l'année d'imposition 2023 ». Bureau de l'ombudsman des contribuables, « L'ombudsman des contribuables lance un examen systémique sur l'administration des exigences de production des simples fiducies de l'Agence du revenu du Canada pour 2023 », *Communiqué de presse*, 10 juillet 2024. Voir aussi la lettre datée du 19 juillet 2024 du Comité mixte sur la fiscalité de ABC/CPA à la Direction de la politique de l'impôt proposant des changements aux nouvelles règles de déclaration visant les simples fiducies susmentionnées.

2 Voir, par exemple, Mark Pawlowski et James Brown, « Trusts: What Is a Bare Trust? » [2020] nº 6 *Private Client Business* 295-99; et Agence du revenu du Canada, *Énoncé de politique sur la TPS/TVH P-015*, « Le traitement des simples-fiducies en vertu de la *Loi sur la taxe d'accise* », 20 juillet 1994.

3 Voir *Mr William Aikman v. John Aikman of Cairnie*, [1677] Mor 12281 (Scot. Ct. Sess.). Le terme a aussi été utilisé très tôt dans la jurisprudence américaine : voir *The Bank of Columbia v. D. Ross* (1799), 4 H. & McH. 456, à la p. 460 (MD CA).

LA SIMPLE FIDUCIE DANS LA LOI DE L'IMPÔT SUR LE REVENU

Le terme « simple fiducie » n'est pas utilisé dans le texte même de la Loi de l'impôt sur le revenu[4] mais, comme il est indiqué ci-dessous, il figure à présent dans un intertitre.

L'Agence du revenu du Canada (ARC) reconnaît le concept de la simple fiducie depuis de nombreuses années. Le 20 mai 1975, l'ARC a publié le *Bulletin d'interprétation* IT-216, « Corporation administrant des biens en tant que mandataire d'un actionnaire », qui établit ce qui suit :

> 1. Une corporation peut administrer *en fiducie*, *en tant que mandataire d'un actionnaire*, des biens qui ont été acquis précisément pour être administrés de cette façon. Cette situation, cependant, ne sera acceptée que lorsqu'il y [*sic*] aura eu accord ou déclaration de dépôt, au moment de l'acquisition des biens ou avant, entre la corporation et l'actionnaire, pour établir clairement l'intention des parties dans l'accord et le degré de participation de l'actionnaire dans le bien ainsi placé en fiducie.
>
> 2. Quand la situation est telle, la corporation est regardée *simplement comme mandataire de l'actionnaire* alors que ce dernier est considéré comme *propriétaire réel des biens*. Comme il n'y a pas eu de changement de propriété, un transfert de biens à une corporation par un actionnaire ne constitue pas une disposition aux fins du calcul d'un gain (ou d'une perte) en capital ou d'une récupération de déductions pour amortissement (ou d'une perte finale).
>
> 3. En ce qui concerne l'actionnaire, toutes les conséquences normales de la propriété découleront des dispositions susmentionnées. Tout revenu (ou toute perte) provenant des biens, y compris toutes déductions pour amortissement récupérées ou toutes pertes finales, *pendant que dure cette administration en fiducie*, seront considérés comme le revenu (ou la perte) de l'actionnaire, indépendamment du fait que des montants reçus aient été ou non transférés à l'actionnaire ou, dans le cas d'une perte, que la corporation ait été remboursée ou non[5].

Bien que l'expression « simple fiducie » ne soit pas utilisée dans l'IT-216, la communauté fiscale a généralement considéré que ce bulletin faisait référence à ce concept[6]. L'ARC a fait référence expressément aux simples fiducies au moins aussi tôt qu'en 1983[7].

---

4 LRC 1985, c. 1 (5e suppl.), telle que modifiée et qu'il est proposé de modifier en date de rédaction du présent article (ci-après « la Loi »). À moins d'indication contraire, les renvois législatifs dans le présent article sont à la Loi.

5 *Bulletin d'interprétation* IT-216, « Corporation administrant des biens en tant que mandataire d'un actionnaire », 20 mai 1975, aux paragraphes 1 à 3 (italique ajouté).

6 Thomas J. Weisz, « Some Implications of Holding Real Estate Through a Trust, a Partnership, a Tenancy-in-Common, or a Limited Partnership », dans *Report of Proceedings of the Thirty-First Tax Conference*, 1979 Conference Report (Toronto : Fondation canadienne de fiscalité, 1980), 728-50, aux pp. 729-31. L'ARC a confirmé que l'IT-216 faisait référence aux simples fiducies dans son annonce de 1991 concernant son étude de ce concept. Voir ci-dessous.

7 Document de l'ARC no 7-2683, « Personal Use of Corporations Property », 18 août 1983.

LA SIMPLE FIDUCIE EN TANT QUE MANDATAIRE

L'IT-216 fait référence à une fiducie qui agit en tant que mandataire. Cependant, dans le cadre d'une table ronde de 1988, l'ARC a semblé faire marche arrière en annonçant que le paragraphe 104(1) (tel qu'il était alors libellé) s'appliquait aux simples fiducies. Plus précisément, l'ARC a déclaré :

> **Q.32** [traduction] **Simple fiducie**
> L'utilisation de la simple fiducie est devenue courante dans de nombreux contextes, par exemple lorsqu'une société prête-nom détient le titre de propriété d'un bien immobilier pour le compte des bénéficiaires effectifs, ou lorsqu'un courtier est le propriétaire enregistré des actions appartenant à un client. Le point commun est que le détenteur du titre de propriété n'a aucun pouvoir discrétionnaire et peu, voire pas du tout, de tâches administratives autres que la distribution de récépissés ou l'exécution d'instructions. Veuillez confirmer que les bénéficiaires effectifs sont considérés comme les propriétaires des biens pour l'impôt sur le revenu *et que les règles relatives aux fiducies ne s'appliqueront pas aux simples fiducies*. Il y a des incohérences dans la position du ministère sur ce point dans la question 24 de la table ronde de 1979 et dans le *Bulletin d'interprétation* IT-216 (daté du 20 mai 1975).
>
> **Position du ministère**
> Nous notons tout d'abord *qu'il existe une distinction juridique entre une relation mandant-mandataire et une relation fiduciaire*. Lorsqu'il existe une relation mandant-mandataire, le bénéficiaire effectif du bien sera assujetti à l'impôt sur le revenu sans égard pour la relation mandant-mandataire.
>
> *Lorsqu'une simple fiducie existe en vertu de la common law*, *les paragraphes 104(1) et (2) de la Loi s'appliqueront* parce que le cédant du bien transfère la propriété en common law du bien au fiduciaire de la fiducie tout en conservant la propriété effective au sens du sous-alinéa 54(c)v)[8]. Par conséquent, nous sommes d'avis que toutes les dispositions pertinentes de la Loi sont applicables à une telle fiducie. Ces fiducies, étant avec droit de retour et révocables, seront toujours assujetties aux dispositions du paragraphe 75(2) et, par conséquent, tous les revenus et les pertes ainsi que les gains et les pertes en capital provenant du bien seront attribuables au cédant[9].

Comme l'indique la question, cette position n'était pas nouvelle : en 1979, l'ARC avait à peu près la même position[10].

8 Voir l'alinéa actuel e) de la définition de « disposition » au paragraphe 248(1).

9 « Revenue Canada Round Table », dans *Report of Proceedings of the Fortieth Tax Conference*, 1988 Conference Report (Toronto : Fondation canadienne de fiscalité, 1989), 53:1-90, question 32, aux pp. 53:47-48 (italique ajouté).

10 « Revenue Canada Round Table », dans *Report of Proceedings of the Thirty-First Tax Conference*, 1979 Conference Report (Toronto : Fondation canadienne de fiscalité, 1980), 601-38, question 24, à la p. 625.

En 1989, l'ARC a reconnu la confusion apparente existant entre les positions énoncées dans son bulletin d'interprétation de 1975 et dans ses réponses aux tables rondes de 1979 et 1988[11]. En 1991, l'ARC a annoncé qu'elle étudiait la question de savoir s'il était correct de traiter une simple fiducie comme un mandataire des bénéficiaires. L'ARC a déclaré :

> [traduction] La question de savoir si le constituant d'une simple fiducie doit ou non être reconnu pour l'impôt comme le propriétaire des biens de la fiducie dans une situation donnée fait l'objet d'une étude par le Ministère. Jusqu'à ce que cette étude soit terminée, un contribuable peut s'appuyer sur les positions publiées dans les bulletins IT-216, IT-437 et ATR-1. En d'autres termes, jusqu'à ce que l'étude soit terminée, le constituant sera considéré comme le propriétaire d'un bien lorsque le bien est transféré à un simple fiduciaire dans des circonstances comparables à celles de nos positions publiées[12].

Cette étude a été terminée en 1995 et l'ARC a adopté officiellement sa position présentée dans l'IT-216 de 1975. L'ARC a indiqué :

> [traduction] Revenu Canada a déclaré dans un article intitulé « Bare Trusts », présenté à la Corporate Management Tax Conference de 1989, que dans l'attente d'une révision de notre position, lorsque des biens sont détenus par une simple fiducie, *nous ne tiendrons pas compte de la fiducie à l'égard de l'impôt sur le revenu* et nous considérerons le cédant ou constituant comme le propriétaire des biens à toutes les fins de la Loi.
>
> Il a également été précisé que nous considérons généralement qu'une simple fiducie est une fiducie en common law si :
>
> - le fiduciaire n'a pas de responsabilités ou de pouvoirs importants et ne peut rien faire sans les instructions du constituant;
> - la seule fonction du fiduciaire est de détenir le titre de propriété du bien;
> - le constituant est le seul bénéficiaire et il peut faire en sorte que les biens lui reviennent à tout moment.
>
> Notre examen de cette question est terminé et *la position ci-dessus demeure inchangée*[13].

Quelques observations sur cette déclaration s'imposent.

---

11 « Revenue Canada Panel », dans *Creative Tax Planning for Real Estate Transactions—Beyond Tax Reform and Into the 1990s*, 1989 Corporate Management Tax Conference (Toronto : Fondation canadienne de fiscalité, 1989), 8:1-28, aux pp. 8:1-6.

12 Document de l'ARC nº 9102585, 27 février 1991.

13 Michael A. Hiltz, « Revenue Canada Review », dans *Report of Proceedings of the Forty-Seventh Tax Conference*, 1995 Conference Report (Toronto : Fondation canadienne de fiscalité, 1996), 52:1-12, à la p. 52:4 (italique ajouté).

Premièrement, le premier point, dans sa référence aux pouvoirs et aux responsabilités (obligations), est trop général. Comme nous le verrons plus loin, une simple fiducie se définit par l'absence d'obligations, et non par la présence de pouvoirs.

Deuxièmement, le troisième point, qui indique qu'une fiducie est simple uniquement lorsque le constituant est le seul bénéficiaire, semble erroné. Rien n'empêche une personne de constituer une simple fiducie pour un bénéficiaire différent.

Troisièmement, comme il est mentionné ci-dessous, il semble n'y avoir aucune raison pour qu'une simple fiducie n'ait qu'un seul bénéficiaire[14].

PARAGRAPHE 104(1)

Comme il est indiqué ci-dessus, lors de la table ronde de 1988, l'ARC a déclaré que le paragraphe 104(1) s'appliquerait aux simples fiducies. Avant 1998, le paragraphe 104(1) indiquait simplement qu'une mention à une fiducie signifiait une mention à ses fiduciaires. En 2001, le paragraphe 104(1) a été modifié, pour les années d'imposition 1998 et suivantes[15], de manière à exclure les fiducies qui agissent en tant que mandataires, et se lit comme suit :

> 104(1) Dans la présente loi, la mention d'une fiducie ou d'une succession (appelées « fiducie » à la présente sous-section) vaut également mention, sauf indication contraire du contexte, du fiduciaire, de l'exécuteur testamentaire, de l'administrateur successoral, du liquidateur de succession, de l'héritier ou d'un autre représentant légal ayant la propriété ou le contrôle des biens de la fiducie. Toutefois, sauf pour l'application du présent paragraphe, du paragraphe (1.1), du sous-alinéa b)(v) de la définition de « disposition » au paragraphe 248(1) et de l'alinéa k) de cette définition, *l'arrangement dans le cadre duquel il est raisonnable de considérer qu'une fiducie agit en qualité de mandataire de l'ensemble de ses bénéficiaires pour ce qui est des opérations portant sur ses biens est réputé ne pas être une fiducie*, sauf si la fiducie est visée à l'un des alinéas a) à e.1) de la définition de « fiducie » au paragraphe 108(1) [italique ajouté].

Le paragraphe modifié ne fait pas référence expressément aux simples fiducies. Les notes explicatives du ministère des Finances relatives à la modification ont cependant confirmé que c'était ce qui était voulu :

14 Voir Maurice C. Cullity, « Personal Liability of Trustees and Rights of Indemnification » (1996) 16:2 *Estates and Trusts Journal* 115-43, aux pp. 118-19, qui définit les simples fiducies en termes de bénéficiaires multiples plutôt que de bénéficiaire unique. Voir, en particulier, ibid., à la p. 120 : « [traduction] La déclaration de Revenu Canada selon laquelle une simple fiducie ne peut avoir qu'un seul bénéficiaire est incompatible avec la décision rendue dans l'affaire *Brookview Investments Ltd. v. M.N.R.* et il est peu probable qu'elle soit correcte. »

15 Loi de 2000 modifiant l'impôt sur le revenu, LC 2001, c. 17, paragraphe 78(1).

Le paragraphe 104(1) est modifié, en conjonction avec le paragraphe 104(1.1), de sorte que soient exclus des fiducies pour l'application des dispositions de la Loi, à l'exception de ces deux paragraphes, du sous-alinéa b)(v) de la définition de « disposition » au paragraphe 248(1) et de l'alinéa k) de cette définition, les arrangements dans le cadre desquels il est raisonnable de supposer que la fiducie agit à titre de représentant de ses bénéficiaires relativement à toutes les opérations touchant ses biens. *On parle alors généralement de « simple fiducie »*. Il est précisé expressément que les fiducies visées aux alinéas a) à e.1) de la définition de « fiducie » au paragraphe 108(1) ne sont pas visées par cette modification[16].

CHANGEMENTS RÉCENTS

La Loi d'exécution de l'énoncé économique de l'automne 2022[17] a modifié le paragraphe 104(1), à compter du 30 décembre 2023, pour qu'il se lise comme suit :

104(1) Dans la présente loi, la mention d'une fiducie ou d'une succession (appelées « fiducie » à la présente sous-section) vaut également mention, sauf indication contraire du contexte, du fiduciaire, de l'exécuteur testamentaire, de l'administrateur successoral, du liquidateur de succession, de l'héritier ou d'un autre représentant légal ayant la propriété ou le contrôle des biens de la fiducie. Toutefois, sauf pour l'application du présent paragraphe, du paragraphe (1.1), de *l'article 150* [italique ajouté], du sous-alinéa b)(v) de la définition de *disposition* au paragraphe 248(1) et de l'alinéa k) de cette définition, l'arrangement dans le cadre duquel il est raisonnable de considérer qu'une fiducie agit en qualité de mandataire de l'ensemble de ses bénéficiaires pour ce qui est des opérations portant sur ses biens est réputé ne pas être une fiducie, sauf si la fiducie est visée à l'un des alinéas a) à e.1) de la définition de *fiducie* au paragraphe 108(1).

ARTICLE 150

Pour comprendre pourquoi le concept qu'une « fiducie agit en qualité de mandataire » a été supprimé pour les besoins de l'article 150, il faut examiner les récentes modifications apportées à cette disposition, qui ont provoqué le brouhaha dans la communauté fiscale.

L'alinéa 150(1)c) exige qu'une fiducie produise une déclaration de revenus dans les 90 jours suivant la fin de son année d'imposition :

150(1) Sous réserve du paragraphe (1.1), une déclaration de revenu sur le formulaire prescrit et contenant les renseignements prescrits doit être présentée au ministre, sans avis ni mise en demeure, pour chaque année d'imposition d'un contribuable […]

c) dans le cas d'une succession ou d'une fiducie, dans les 90 jours suivant la fin de l'année.

16 Canada, ministère des Finances, *Notes explicatives concernant l'impôt sur le revenu* (Ottawa : ministère des Finances, mars 2001), aux pp. 275-76 (italique ajouté).

17 LC 2022, c. 19, paragraphe 13(1).

Toutefois, si le terme « fiducie » n'inclut pas une simple fiducie, cette disposition ne s'appliquerait pas et les simples fiducies ne seraient pas tenues de produire une déclaration de revenus (même si, bien entendu, leurs mandants, étant les bénéficiaires, devraient en produire une).

La Loi d'exécution de l'énoncé économique de l'automne 2022 a ajouté les paragraphes 150(1.2) à (1.4) à la Loi, pour les années d'imposition se terminant après le 30 décembre 2023[18]. Le nouveau paragraphe 150(1.3) établit, en particulier, ce qui suit :

> 150(1.3) Pour l'application du présent article, une fiducie comprend l'arrangement dans le cadre duquel il est raisonnable de considérer qu'une fiducie agit en qualité de mandataire de l'ensemble de ses bénéficiaires pour ce qui est des opérations portant sur ses biens.

Ainsi, une « fiducie » à l'alinéa 150(1)c) comprend maintenant une fiducie qui agit en tant que mandataire, qui s'entend généralement d'une simple fiducie, bien que ce terme ne soit utilisé que dans l'intertitre[19].

Déclaration de revenus de la simple fiducie

Les fiducies produisent une déclaration de revenus T3. L'année d'imposition des fiducies correspond généralement à l'année civile[20]. Ainsi, les premières déclarations T3 pour les simples fiducies étaient exigibles 90 jours après le

18 Ibid., au paragraphe 35(2).

19 Dans l'arrêt *Canada (Sécurité publique et Protection civile) c. Weldemariam*, 2024 CAF 69, au paragraphe 96, la Cour a affirmé : « Je reconnais que, conformément à l'article 14 de la *Loi d'interprétation*, L.R.C. (1985), ch. I-21, les notes marginales et les sous-titres ne font pas partie de la loi et n'y figurent qu'à titre de repère ou d'information. Cela dit, il est néanmoins permis de les considérer comme faisant partie du processus d'interprétation, bien qu'on puisse leur accorder un poids inférieur qu'à d'autres outils d'interprétation : *Corbett c. Canada*, [1997] 1 CF 386 (C.A.F.), 1996 CanLII 3849, au para. 13. » Les notes explicatives du ministère des Finances portant sur le paragraphe 150(1.3) indiquent que ce paragraphe traite de la « simple fiducie » : Canada, ministère des Finances, *Notes explicatives relatives à la Loi de l'impôt sur le revenu et à d'autres textes législatifs* (Ottawa : ministère des Finances, novembre 2022), qui accompagne l'avis de motion de voies et moyens introduisant la Loi d'exécution de l'énoncé économique de l'automne 2022, supra, note 17.

20 L'alinéa 249(1)c) s'applique aux personnes autres que les sociétés et les fiducies testamentaires et donc aux particuliers. En vertu du paragraphe 104(2), une fiducie est considérée comme un particulier en ce qui concerne ses biens. Par conséquent, l'alinéa 249(1)c) s'applique aux fiducies entre vifs et leur donne une année d'imposition civile. Dans le document de l'ARC nº 2024-1005851C6, 7 mai 2024, l'ARC a réitéré un point de vue qu'elle avait déjà défendu, à savoir que l'année d'imposition d'une fiducie continue de correspondre à la fin de l'année civile, même si la fiducie est dissoute au cours de l'année. Je me contenterai de dire que je ne suis pas d'accord avec ce point de vue.

31 décembre 2023, soit le 30 mars 2024, un samedi[21]. L'ARC a annoncé que la date limite serait reportée au 2 avril 2024[22].

Le 28 mars 2024, après que de nombreux contribuables et leurs conseillers aient consacré beaucoup de temps et d'argent à la préparation des T3 pour les simples fiducies ou à la détermination de leur situation, à savoir si celle-ci comportait une simple fiducie ou autre chose, l'ARC a annoncé que les simples fiducies n'étaient pas tenues de produire des T3 pour l'année d'imposition 2023. L'ARC a déclaré :

> Pour appuyer les efforts continus visant à assurer l'efficacité et l'intégrité du régime fiscal canadien, le gouvernement du Canada a mis en place de nouvelles exigences de déclaration pour les fiducies.
>
> L'Agence du revenu du Canada reconnaît que les nouvelles exigences de déclaration pour les simples fiducies ont eu des répercussions imprévues sur les Canadiennes et Canadiens. Elle **n'exigera donc pas que les simples fiducies produisent une *Déclaration de renseignements et de revenus des fiducies T3*, y compris l'annexe 15 (*Renseignements sur la propriété effective d'une fiducie*) pour l'année d'imposition 2023**, à moins qu'elle n'en fasse directement la demande[23].

21 La réponse à la question de savoir si le samedi est un jour férié fédéral n'est pas aussi simple qu'on pourrait le penser. La majeure partie de la définition de « jour férié » à l'article 35(1) de la Loi d'interprétation, LRC 1985, c. I-21, telle que modifiée, n'inclut pas le samedi. Mais l'alinéa a) de cette définition inclut tout jour qui est un jour non juridique au sens d'une loi provinciale. Autrement dit, tout jour où les tribunaux ne sont pas ouverts dans une province est un « jour férié » pour le gouvernement fédéral. Il faut donc vérifier non seulement les lois d'interprétation provinciales, mais aussi les règles de procédure de chaque province et éventuellement d'autres lois provinciales avant de pouvoir affirmer que le samedi est un jour férié dans une province donnée. Si c'est le cas, en vertu de l'article 26 de la Loi d'interprétation, tout ce qui doit être fait ce jour-là peut être fait le jour suivant qui n'est pas un jour férié. L'ARC a publié une annonce générale selon laquelle elle considère le samedi comme un jour férié dans toutes les provinces (https://www.canada.ca/fr/agence-revenu/services/impot/jours-feries.html), bien que je propose que l'on ne puisse pas compter sur cette annonce parce qu'il n'y a pas de préclusion à l'égard de la Loi.

22 Agence du revenu du Canada, « Nouvelles exigences en matière de déclaration des fiducies et des simples fiducies pour les déclarations T3 produites pour les années d'imposition se terminant après le 30 décembre 2023 » (https://www.canada.ca/fr/agence-revenu/services/impot/administrateurs-fiducies/declaration-t3/nouvelles-exigences-declarations-t3-annees-imposition-terminant-decembre-2023.html#toc2).

23 Agence du revenu du Canada, « Nouveau — Les simples fiducies sont exemptées des exigences en matière de déclaration des fiducies pour 2023 », 28 mars 2024 (https://www.canada.ca/fr/agence-revenu/nouvelles/salle-presse/conseils-fiscaux/conseils-fiscaux-2024/simples-fiducies-exemptees-exigences-matiere-declaration-fiducies-2023.html). L'annonce ne mentionne pas le paragraphe 220(2.1), qui prévoit que « [l]e ministre peut renoncer à exiger qu'une personne produise un formulaire prescrit, un reçu ou autre document ou fournisse des renseignements prescrits, aux termes d'une disposition de la présente loi ou de son règlement d'application. La personne est néanmoins tenue de fournir le document ou les renseignements à la demande du ministre. »

Une recherche rapide dans Google montre que bien des gens ont été contrariés par cet avis tardif.

QU'EST-CE QU'UNE SIMPLE FIDUCIE?

Nous n'avons pas encore défini ce qu'est une simple fiducie.

Pour ce faire, nous devons toutefois d'abord définir ce qu'est une fiducie. Bien qu'il n'existe pas encore de définition qui prenne en compte tous les types ou variétés de fiducies, la définition suivante est largement acceptée comme englobant la grande majorité des fiducies :

> [traduction] Une fiducie est une obligation équitable en vertu de laquelle une personne (le fiduciaire) est tenue d'administrer les biens dont elle a le contrôle (les biens de la fiducie) pour le compte d'un groupe de personnes (les bénéficiaires ou *cestuis que trust*) dont il peut faire partie lui-même, et dont n'importe quel membre peut faire exécuter l'obligation. Tout acte ou toute négligence de la part d'un fiduciaire qui n'est pas autorisé ou excusé par les termes de l'instrument de fiducie, ou par la loi, est appelé abus de confiance[24].

Qu'est-ce alors qu'une simple fiducie? En termes simples, il s'agit d'une fiducie dans laquelle le fiduciaire n'a pas d'autres obligations que de détenir le titre de propriété des biens de la fiducie pendant l'existence de celle-ci et de distribuer ce titre au bénéficiaire à sa demande. Cette définition (si on peut l'appeler ainsi — « description » serait peut-être un meilleur terme) d'une simple fiducie a été établie il y a des centaines d'années. Dans l'affaire *Christie v. Ovington*, le vice-chancelier Hall décrivait un simple fiduciaire comme suit :

> [traduction] un fiduciaire dont la fonction n'était assortie d'aucune obligation à l'origine ou qui, bien que sa fonction fût assortie d'obligations à l'origine, serait contraint en equity, à la demande des *cestuis que trust*, de leur transférer le patrimoine, ou de le transférer suivant leurs instructions, et a été prié par eux de le leur transférer[25].

Dans l'affaire *Scoretz v. Kensam Enterprises Inc.*, qui est importante pour les raisons exposées ci-dessous, la Cour utilise essentiellement la même formulation :

---

24 Underhill et Hayton, *Law of Trusts and Trustees*, diverses éditions (Londres : LexisNexis). Cette définition est citée dans de nombreux arrêts. Voir, entre autres exemples, *Alessandro c. La Reine*, 2007 CCI 411, au paragraphe 62.

25 (1875), 1 Ch. D. 279, à la p. 281 (HCJ). Cette citation a été reprise avec approbation dans plusieurs décisions canadiennes, fiscales et autres. Voir, par exemple, *Nash v. Nash*, 2019 MBCA 31, au paragraphe 27; *Mordo v. Nitting et al.*, 2006 BCSC 1761, aux paragraphes 359-60; et *Collins v. The Queen*, [2002] TCJ nº 288, au paragraphe 5.

> [traduction] Une personne peut détenir des biens pour le compte d'une autre personne en tant que simple fiduciaire, sans pour autant endosser tous les attributs d'un fiduciaire. Un simple fiduciaire n'a pas d'autre obligation que celle de transférer le bien au bénéficiaire à sa demande et d'exercer une diligence raisonnable à l'égard du bien. La jurisprudence n'élucide pas en détail les obligations du fiduciaire dans ce contexte, mais toute obligation fiduciaire est manifestement limitée[26].

Comment le fiduciaire en est-il venu à avoir des obligations aussi limitées? Cela peut s'être produit de plusieurs manières, notamment parce que 1) l'instrument de fiducie (ou les termes verbaux de la fiducie, s'il n'y avait pas d'instrument écrit) n'imposait pas d'autres obligations actives au fiduciaire que celle de transférer la propriété des biens de la fiducie au bénéficiaire à sa demande; 2) le fiduciaire devait accomplir certaines obligations actives en attendant la réalisation de certaines conditions, mais ces conditions sont maintenant réunies, de sorte que les obligations ont disparu; 3) la simple fiducie existe par l'effet de la loi, par exemple une fiducie résultoire[27] ou une fiducie constructoire, ou la fiducie du vendeur d'un bien immobilier vendu à un acheteur si la vente n'a pas encore eu lieu; ou 4) un ancien fiduciaire continue à détenir des biens fiduciaires[28].

Il a été avancé que le concept moderne de simple fiduciaire est légèrement plus large que celui décrit dans les deux citations ci-dessus[29]. Cette question est abordée plus en détail sous le titre « Obligations actives versus obligations passives » ci-dessous.

---

26 2018 BCCA 66, au paragraphe 23. La question de savoir si un simple fiduciaire a des obligations de nature fiduciaire n'a pas été résolue de manière définitive. Il a été proposé qu'un simple fiduciaire n'a aucune obligation fiduciaire : *Financial Management Inc. v. Planidin*, 2006 ABCA 44, au paragraphe 19. La Cour n'a pas cité de précédent à l'appui de cette proposition. À mon avis, elle n'est pas correcte : voir *Scoretz*, supra, aux paragraphes 27-28. Voir aussi Paul Matthews, « All About Bare Trusts: Part 2 » [2005] n° 6 *Private Client Business* 336, aux pp. 342-43, note 29 et le texte d'accompagnement. Dans *Stewart v. 6551450 Manitoba Ltd. et al.*, 2023 MBCA 72, au paragraphe 80, la Cour a laissé entendre que la question de savoir si un simple fiduciaire a des obligations fiduciaires dépend des faits particuliers de l'affaire. Au même titre, voir *Loeppky et al. v. Taylor McCaffrey LLP et al.*, 2023 MBCA 101, au paragraphe 61. Voir aussi Albert Oosterhoff, Mitchell McInnes et Robert Chambers, *Oosterhoff on Trusts*, 9e éd. (Toronto : Carswell, 2019), à la p. 1102, note 19, qui laissent entendre que l'affaire *Financial Management Inc.*, supra, était incorrecte sur ce point.

27 Sur la question de savoir si une fiducie résultoire peut être une simple fiducie, voir *Novosell v. Bolster*, 2022 ABKB 682, au paragraphe 29.

28 Sur la question de savoir si un ancien fiduciaire peut continuer à détenir des biens fiduciaires, voir *Park, in the matter of Queensland Nickel Pty Ltd (in liq) (N° 3)*, [2022] FCA 1301, au paragraphe 176; confirmé par [2023] FCAFC 150, aux paragraphes 174-83.

29 Voir *Collins*, supra, note 25, au paragraphe 5.

Intérêt absolu?

On dit parfois qu'un bénéficiaire doit avoir un intérêt « absolu » dans les biens fiduciaires pour qu'il puisse y avoir une simple fiducie[30]. À mon avis, il s'agit là d'un résultat plutôt que d'une condition de la définition de la simple fiducie. Si le bénéficiaire peut exiger que le fiduciaire distribue les biens de la fiducie, il faut que le bénéficiaire ait un intérêt absolu dans ces biens; sinon, le fiduciaire aurait l'obligation d'envisager de distribuer les biens à d'autres bénéficiaires ou de les conserver dans la fiducie.

Multiples bénéficiaires?

Une autre question est de savoir si une simple fiducie peut compter plus d'un bénéficiaire. On considère que ce n'est pas possible, car s'il y a plus d'un bénéficiaire, alors aucun ne pourrait avoir le droit absolu d'exiger les biens de la fiducie, ce qui est la condition indispensable pour qu'il y ait une simple fiducie. À mon avis, si tous les bénéficiaires ont un droit absolu sur les biens de la fiducie, ils pourraient tous exiger les biens et il y aurait quand même une simple fiducie. En effet, la Cour suprême du Canada a déclaré qu'une simple fiducie peut avoir de multiples bénéficiaires[31].

30 Voir, parmi de nombreux autres exemples, *Bronson v. Hewitt*, 2010 BCSC 169, au paragraphe 680; infirmé sur d'autres motifs 2013 BCCA 367. Je pense que le terme « absolu » peut provenir du paragraphe 22(5) de la Finance Act 1965 (UK), 1965, c. 25, qui utilise l'expression « [traduction] a un droit absolu à l'égard du fiduciaire ». Dans l'affaire *Stephenson (HM Inspector of Taxes) v. Barclays Bank Trust Co. Ltd.*, [1975] 1 All ER 625, à la p. 637 (Ch. D.), la Cour mentionne cette disposition et l'affaire *Saunders v. Vautier* (1841), 41 ER 482 (Ch. D.) et déclare : « [traduction] Il est de notoriété publique que les personnes qui détiennent l'intégralité des intérêts bénéficiaires d'un fonds fiduciaire donné sont habilitées, en tant que groupe, à donner des instructions aux fiduciaires sur la manière dont ce fonds fiduciaire doit être géré, et c'est évidemment le territoire juridique d'où découle cette définition. »

31 Voir *Valard Construction Ltd. c. Bird Construction Co.*, 2018 CSC 8, au paragraphe 25. Paul Matthews, « All About Bare Trusts: Part 1 » [2005] nº 5 *Private Client Business* 266, à la p. 267, note 5, affirme qu'une simple fiducie peut avoir plus d'un bénéficiaire. Voir aussi la discussion sur l'affaire *Trident*, infra, note 33, dans le texte ci-dessous sous le titre « La simple fiducie n'est pas prise en compte : l'affaire *Trident* », où une société a agi en tant que simple fiduciaire pour six personnes. Je note qu'en septembre 2023, l'ARC a publié l'*Avis sur la taxe sur les logements sous-utilisés* UHTN15, « Taxe sur les logements sous-utilisés — Questions et réponses » (https://www.canada.ca/fr/agence-revenu/services/formulaires-publications/publications/uhtn15/taxe-logements-sous-utilises-questions-et-reponses.html). Le paragraphe 1.12 de l'Avis définit une simple fiducie par référence aux « bénéficiaires », tout comme la note du formulaire T4013 de l'ARC, « T3 — Guide des fiducies 2023 ». En fait, le nouveau paragraphe 150(1.3) fait expressément mention d'une fiducie agissant comme mandataire des « bénéficiaires ».

Obligations versus pouvoirs

Il convient de noter que la définition de la simple fiducie exposée ci-dessus se concentre sur les *obligations* limitées du fiduciaire; il n'est pas fait mention de ses *pouvoirs*. Comme on l'a vu ailleurs, un fiduciaire peut avoir plusieurs pouvoirs relativement aux biens de la fiducie, comme le pouvoir d'assurer les biens de la fiducie ou de les investir, tout en étant un simple fiduciaire[32].

Mais est-ce réellement le cas? Il existe en effet une abondante jurisprudence qui estime qu'un simple fiduciaire doit avoir non seulement des obligations limitées, mais aussi des pouvoirs très limités. Dans l'affaire *Trident Holdings Ltd. v. Danand Investments Ltd.*[33], la Cour a cité avec approbation le passage suivant d'un article de Maurice Cullity :

> [traduction] La caractéristique distinctive de la simple fiducie est que le fiduciaire n'a pas de discrétion, de responsabilités ni de *pouvoirs* indépendants. Sa seule responsabilité consiste à exécuter les instructions de ses mandants, soit les bénéficiaires. S'il n'a pas à accepter d'instructions, s'il dispose de responsabilités ou de pouvoirs indépendants importants, il n'est pas un simple fiduciaire[34].

Une décision australienne rendue en première instance a expressément établi que la présence de pouvoirs indépendants empêche une fiducie d'être une simple fiducie, indépendamment de l'absence d'obligations indépendantes. La Cour a conclu : « [traduction] Il me semble qu'un "pouvoir actif" (par opposition à une "obligation active"), quelle que soit son importance, suffira à faire de la fiducie autre chose qu'une simple fiducie[35] ».

Bien qu'il semble que cette question doive être définitivement tranchée dans l'avenir en cour d'appel ou par la Cour suprême du Canada, je suis d'avis que les précédents modernes qui estiment qu'un pouvoir actif ou indépendant empêche la fiducie d'être une simple fiducie s'écartent de la définition historique de ce concept et que cette position ne devrait pas être acceptée. Tout fiduciaire aura certains pouvoirs — prendre des mesures pour protéger les biens de la fiducie, intenter une action en justice pour abus de confiance[36], produire des déclarations

---

32 Matthews, « All About Bare Trusts: Part 2 », supra, note 26, à la p. 343.

33 1988 CanLII 194 (ONCA).

34 Maurice C. Cullity, « Liability of Beneficiaries—A Rejoinder » (1985) 7:1 *Estates and Trusts Quarterly* 35-52, à la p. 36 (italique ajouté).

35 *ISPT Nominees Pty Ltd v. Chief Commissioner of State Revenue*, [2003] NSWSC 697, au paragraphe 280, cité avec approbation dans *Mercier Rouse Street Pty Ltd v. Burness*, [2015] VSCA 8, au paragraphe 98. À mon avis, la conclusion de la Cour dans *ISPT* au paragraphe 280 est directement contraire à la citation au paragraphe 279 de *Re Lashmar*, [1891] 1 Ch 258, à la p. 269, juge Fry.

36 Dans *Centurion Apartment Properties Limited Partnership v. Sorenson Trilogy Engineering Ltd.*, 2024 BCCA 25, au paragraphe 119, la Cour a conclu que, même dans le cas d'une simple fiducie, seul le fiduciaire, et non le bénéficiaire, peut intenter une action pour abus de confiance.

de revenus — qu'il peut exercer sans recevoir d'instructions d'un bénéficiaire. Laisser entendre que la présence de ces pouvoirs empêche la fiducie d'être automatiquement « simple » revient à limiter le concept de simple fiducie aux arrangements qui éliminent expressément ces pouvoirs dans l'acte de fiducie. Il ne semble pas que cela n'ait jamais été la limite prévue pour les simples fiducies.

Obligations actives versus obligations passives

Lorsque nous parlons d'un simple fiduciaire ayant des obligations limitées, à quel type d'obligations faisons-nous référence? Il semble que nous nous référions aux obligations énoncées expressément dans l'acte de fiducie. En d'autres termes, si l'instrument de fiducie lui-même n'impose aucune obligation au fiduciaire, ou seulement des obligations très limitées, l'obligation principale étant de remettre les biens de la fiducie au bénéficiaire à sa demande, il s'agit alors d'une simple fiducie. Le fait que le fiduciaire puisse avoir des obligations dites « passives », c'est-à-dire des obligations qui lui sont imposées par la loi régissant les fiducies du seul fait de sa qualité de fiduciaire, n'empêche pas la fiducie d'être une simple fiducie[37]. *Waters' Law of Trusts* affirme ce qui suit :

> [traduction] La signification généralement acceptée du terme « simple fiducie », « fiducie nue » ou « fiducie simple » est une fiducie dans laquelle le ou les fiduciaires détiennent des biens sans autre obligation que de les transférer sur demande au bénéficiaire ou aux bénéficiaires. *Il est vrai, bien sûr, que tant qu'un fiduciaire détient un bien en fiducie, il ou elle a l'obligation de rendre compte de ce bien, de le garder en sécurité et de le préserver. Le fiduciaire ne peut se soustraire à cette obligation* et, s'il s'agit de sa seule obligation, il ou elle doit transférer ces biens au bénéficiaire à sa demande. Par exemple, une société peut transférer des actifs tels que des comptes clients de ses documents comptables dans une fiducie pour elle-même; la seule obligation du fiduciaire dans cette situation consiste à garder ces actifs en sécurité. Il s'agit d'une situation où il n'y a jamais eu d'obligations actives. Par ailleurs, un constituant peut avoir exigé le maintien d'un bénéficiaire jusqu'à ce qu'il atteigne l'âge de la majorité. À la survenance de cet événement, le bénéficiaire a le droit d'exiger le capital et les revenus. Il s'agit d'une situation où il y a eu des obligations actives, mais ces dernières n'existent plus. Le fiduciaire est alors simple, ou nu, sans obligations actives décrétées par le constituant.
>
> Si le fiduciaire n'exerce ses obligations juridiques que dans le but de garder les biens, avant leur transfert au bénéficiaire, *ces obligations sont dites passives*[38].

37 Voir Robert Flannigan, « Resolving the Status of the Bare Trust » (2019) 83:3 *Conveyancer and Property Lawyer* 207-26, à la p. 208.

38 Donovan W.M. Waters, Lionel D. Smith et Mark R. Gillen, *Waters' Law of Trusts in Canada*, 5e éd. (Toronto : Carswell, 2021), chapitre 2.VIII (italique ajouté).

Dans l'affaire *Collins*, la Cour a fait remarquer que « [traduction] la jurisprudence la plus récente fait allusion à de simples fiduciaires qui ont des obligations passives ou des obligations non liées à la gestion, de nature comptable ou protectrice[39] ». Et une décision australienne établit que « [traduction] d'un point de vue strictement logique, il n'existe presque aucune situation dans laquelle un fiduciaire ne peut pas, dans certaines circonstances, avoir des obligations actives à remplir[40] ».

La citation tirée de *Waters' Law of Trusts* ci-dessus a été citée avec approbation en Australie. Dans une décision rendue dans ce pays, la Cour d'appel, après avoir examiné différents précédents, a résumé les règles applicables aux simples fiducies comme suit :

> [traduction] Les principes pouvant être tirés des affaires *Herdegan*, *Corumo* et *GCU v. One.Tel* sont les suivants :
>
> a) si le fiduciaire a des obligations actives en plus de celles qui découlent de sa fonction, il n'est pas un simple fiduciaire[41];
> b) les obligations actives *autres que celles qui existent en vertu de la fonction de fiduciaire* comprennent les obligations énumérées par le constituant, c'est-à-dire les obligations énumérées dans les termes de la fiducie;
> c) une obligation évidente et importante pour tout fiduciaire est d'obéir aux termes de la fiducie;
> d) l'obligation de débourser des fonds conformément aux modalités de la fiducie est une obligation active, de sorte que le fiduciaire investi de cette obligation ne sera pas un simple fiduciaire[42].

39 Supra, note 25, au paragraphe 5.

40 *Corumo Holdings Pty Ltd v. C Itoh Ltd* (1991), 24 NSWLR 370, à la p. 398 (CA), juge Meagher. Un exemple donné était celui d'un fiduciaire qui détient des actions d'une société lors de l'assemblée générale annuelle de la société et qui n'a pas reçu d'instructions de la part du bénéficiaire sur les modalités de vote des actions.

41 Notons qu'il n'est pas fait référence aux pouvoirs. Dans Suhaylah Sequeira, « Quand une simple fiducie est-elle résidente du Canada? » (2024) 14:3 *Focus sur la fiscalité canadienne* 14-15, l'auteure laisse entendre qu'une simple fiducie n'a aucun pouvoir et que, par conséquent, une simple fiducie résidera là où résident les bénéficiaires, car ce sont eux qui contrôlent la fiducie. Sans vouloir manquer de respect à l'auteure, je ne suis pas d'accord avec cette affirmation. Un simple fiduciaire peut avoir des pouvoirs et la simple fiducie peut être résidente là où il exerce ces pouvoirs, mais la question de savoir si le fiduciaire exerce ses pouvoirs de son propre chef ou selon les instructions des bénéficiaires, et si le fiduciaire exerce des pouvoirs suffisamment importants pour influer sur la résidence de la fiducie, sont des questions de fait auxquelles il ne peut être répondu qu'en fonction de la situation propre à chaque fiducie.

42 *Queensland Nickel Pty Ltd (in liq) v. QNI Metals Ltd*, [2021] QCA 138, au paragraphe 56 (italique ajouté).

Ainsi, le moyen le plus « facile » de déterminer si une fiducie est une simple fiducie consiste à lire l'instrument de fiducie. S'il impose des obligations importantes au fiduciaire, la fiducie ne peut pas être une simple fiducie. Dans le cas contraire, si la seule obligation imposée au fiduciaire est de remettre sur demande les biens de la fiducie, il s'agit d'une simple fiducie.

Olympia

La question de savoir si un fiduciaire a des obligations si limitées qu'il peut être qualifié de simple fiduciaire n'a pas souvent fait l'objet de litiges, probablement parce que la lecture de l'acte de fiducie indique clairement si le fiduciaire a des obligations simples ou actives. Une affaire dans laquelle la question s'est posée est celle de *Olympia Trust Company c. Canada*[43]. Olympia était le fiduciaire d'une fiducie qui administrait un régime enregistré d'épargne-retraite (REER). Le REER (c'est-à-dire Olympia en tant que fiduciaire de la fiducie) a acheté certains biens à un non-résident du Canada, mais n'a pas retenu ou remis une partie du prix d'achat comme l'exigeait (prétendument) le paragraphe 116(3). Olympia a soutenu, entre autres, que la fiducie était une simple fiducie et que, par conséquent, le rentier du REER, plutôt qu'Olympia, était le véritable acheteur. La Cour a rejeté cet argument et a jugé que le fiduciaire disposait de pouvoirs suffisamment importants pour créer une fiducie active plutôt qu'une simple fiducie :

> Pour être tout à fait exhaustif, je ferai observer que, dans son mémoire, l'appelante a affirmé que les fiducies des REÉR étaient des « nues-fiducies », ce qui a pour conséquence qu'on ne devrait pas en tenir compte pour les besoins de la Loi. À mon avis, cette affirmation est peu convaincante. Tout d'abord, *Olympia en tant que fiduciaire des fiducies des REÉR est investie de pouvoirs et de responsabilités réels*. En particulier, il est clair qu'alors que les rentiers jouissent de droits d'autogestion, *Olympia a le pouvoir de bloquer des ordres de vente de biens des fiducies*. De plus, des obligations en matière de déclaration et de retenue fiscales à l'égard de ces fiducies incombent à Olympia. Enfin, chaque fiducie de REÉR a un bénéficiaire qui n'est pas le rentier. *Ces facteurs sont suffisants pour rejeter l'affirmation relative à la « nue-fiducie »*[44].

À la lumière de la définition d'une simple fiducie énoncée ci-dessus, il semble que seule la première des raisons citées par la Cour dans l'affaire *Olympia* était pertinente pour déterminer si la fiducie était une simple fiducie. Le fait que le fiduciaire devait produire la déclaration de revenus et qu'il y avait plus d'un bénéficiaire étaient erronés et non pertinents, dans cet ordre. En l'absence du

43 2015 CAF 279.

44 Ibid., au paragraphe 76 (italique ajouté).

nouveau paragraphe 150(1.3) et du paragraphe 104(1) nouvellement modifié, un simple fiduciaire n'était pas tenu, à l'époque, de produire une déclaration de revenus. Et le fait qu'il y ait plus d'un bénéficiaire ne dit rien sur l'étendue des obligations du fiduciaire.

Enfin, le raisonnement de la Cour selon lequel le droit de ne pas tenir compte des ordres de vente des actifs du REER annule l'existence d'une simple fiducie n'est pas correct : l'essence même d'une simple fiducie est que le fiduciaire doit obéir à l'ordre du bénéficiaire de distribuer les biens. Le fait que le bénéficiaire ne puisse pas ordonner au fiduciaire de *vendre* les biens n'a rien à voir. Dans le cas d'un REER autogéré, il semble probable que le fiduciaire ne pourrait pas refuser de liquider le REER et de distribuer tous les biens de la fiducie au rentier. Les motifs de la Cour d'appel ne précisent pas si Olympia avait d'autres *obligations* actives.

AUTRES OBSERVATIONS SUR LE MANDAT

L'ARC semble assimiler la simple fiducie à un mandat. C'est-à-dire qu'elle semble considérer qu'une simple fiducie agit automatiquement en tant que mandataire des bénéficiaires. La position de l'ARC découle peut-être du libellé du paragraphe 104(1) (et à présent du paragraphe 150(1.3)), ou peut-être ces dispositions sont-elles libellées ainsi en raison de la position de l'ARC, mais quelle qu'en soit la cause, elle est erronée.

Le principe fondamental du mandat est que le mandant peut diriger les activités du mandataire parce qu'il existe un contrat entre eux. Une fiducie n'est pas un contrat, de sorte qu'une simple fiducie ne peut pas être un mandataire du seul fait qu'elle est une simple fiducie. Il faut qu'il y ait une autre exigence. Comme le note Matthews, « [traduction] le simple fiduciaire n'a pas de pouvoir général de mandat au nom du bénéficiaire[45] ». Dans sa classification des différents types de simples fiducies, Matthews déclare :

> [traduction] Le troisième cas est celui de la simple fiducie (1er sens)[46] plus un contrat de type mandat, où le fiduciaire est le seul et unique détenteur des biens en fiducie pour le bénéficiaire, mais accepte également de faire tout ce que le constituant/mandant lui demande, ou du moins tout ce qui lui est demandé dans une certaine gamme de possibilités. La fiducie d'investissement à participation unitaire (*unit trust*) (appelée « fonds commun de placement » aux États-Unis) en est un exemple. Ce type de structure est également communément appelée prête-nom, mais, contrairement à la première catégorie mentionnée ci-dessus, le prête-nom

45 Matthews, « All About Bare Trusts: Part 2 », supra, note 26, à la p. 343.

46 Le 1er sens donné par Matthews correspond à la définition de simples fiducies qui figure ci-dessus. Son « 2e sens » repose sur certaines décisions britanniques interprétant diverses lois qui utilisent le terme « simple fiducie ». Matthews aborde peu ce 2e sens et nous ne l'abordons pas du tout dans le présent article.

> détient ici le titre de propriété des actifs en question. Certains auteurs ne font pas la distinction entre cette structure et la simple fiducie, et considèrent qu'un simple fiduciaire « est un prête-nom qui doit suivre les instructions du bénéficiaire ». *L'auteur est d'avis qu'un simple fiduciaire (1er sens) est moins que cela*, et il existe d'ailleurs des opinions judiciaires incidentes qui distinguent les deux concepts[47].

Dans l'affaire *Scoretz*[48], la Cour a confirmé qu'une simple fiducie n'est pas automatiquement un mandataire. La Cour a jugé que si un bénéficiaire ne dispose pas d'un contrôle suffisant sur les actions du fiduciaire (ce qui, bien que la Cour ne l'ait pas dit, devrait résulter d'un contrat), alors un simple fiduciaire n'est pas un mandataire[49].

Or, dans de nombreux cas, voire dans la plupart des cas, les documents qui établissent les simples fiducies précisent que le simple fiduciaire est également un prête-nom et/ou un mandataire du bénéficiaire. Ainsi, dans de nombreux cas, le simple fiduciaire sera en fait un mandataire contractuel et le paragraphe 104(1) s'appliquera (mais il ne sera pas tenu compte du mandat en vertu du paragraphe 150(1.3)).

LA SIMPLE FIDUCIE N'EST PAS PRISE EN COMPTE : L'AFFAIRE TRIDENT

En raison du paragraphe 104(1), et à l'exception du paragraphe 150(1.3), lorsqu'un simple fiduciaire est également un mandataire, les dispositions de la Loi relatives aux fiducies ne s'appliquent pas. Il en résulte que la simple fiducie n'est pas prise en compte et que le bénéficiaire/mandant est considéré comme le propriétaire des biens de la fiducie, avec toutes les conséquences qui en découlent sur le plan de l'impôt sur le revenu.

L'affaire de loin la plus célèbre au Canada concernant l'interaction entre l'aspect fiduciaire et l'aspect mandataire (s'il y en a un) d'une simple fiducie est *Trident Holdings v. Danand Investments*[50]. Trident a présenté une proposition pour la fourniture et l'installation d'équipements électriques pour le développement de Danand. Danand détenait le titre de propriété en tant que simple fiduciaire pour d'autres personnes. Trident a poursuivi Danand et les autres personnes pour rupture de contrat. Le juge de première instance a accordé des dommages-intérêts aux défendeurs et a ordonné que le jugement soit exécutoire sur l'intérêt de Danand dans le terrain.

---

47 Matthews, « All About Bare Trusts: Part 1 », supra, note 31, à la p. 267 (italique ajouté). Voir aussi Peter G. Watts, *Bowstead & Reynolds on Agency*, 23e éd. (Londres : Sweet & Maxwell, 2023), à la section 1-032 : « [traduction] il ne s'en suit pas que tous les simples fiduciaires sont des mandataires ».

48 Supra, note 26.

49 Ibid., au paragraphe 36.

50 Supra, note 33.

Les bénéficiaires de la simple fiducie ont fait valoir que les bénéficiaires ne sont pas contractuellement responsables des contrats conclus par leur fiduciaire. La Cour d'appel a accepté ce principe général, mais elle a estimé qu'en vertu du contrat de simple fiducie, Danand avait le pouvoir d'exécuter des contrats liant les « bénéficiaires » et qu'ils étaient donc personnellement responsables. Danand n'était pas seulement un simple fiduciaire, mais aussi un mandataire des bénéficiaires. En outre, la relation mandant-mandataire était prédominante. La Cour a jugé qu'une relation mandant-mandataire peut exister en même temps qu'une simple fiducie et entraîner la responsabilité des mandants, même si, en tant que bénéficiaires, ils n'avaient pas de responsabilité contractuelle.

En statuant ainsi, la Cour d'appel a cité avec approbation un article de Maurice Cullity (aujourd'hui ex-juge) dans lequel il affirmait :

> [traduction] Il est évident que dans de nombreuses situations, les fiduciaires seront également mandataires. C'est le cas, par exemple, des placements détenus par un courtier en valeurs mobilières en tant que prête-nom ou d'un terrain détenu par une société prête-nom. Dans ces cas, la relation fiduciaire qui découle de la séparation de la propriété en common law et de la propriété en equity est souvent décrite comme une simple fiducie et, pour des *fins fiscales* et autres, *il n'en est*, *à juste titre*, *pas tenu compte*[51].

Cullity n'explique pas *pourquoi* il n'est « à juste titre, pas tenu compte » des simples fiducies en tant que mandataires à l'égard de l'impôt. Je pense que la raison est la suivante : un fiduciaire conclut un contrat personnel pour tous les engagements qu'il prend en tant que fiduciaire. Au regard du monde extérieur, le fiduciaire est le seul et unique propriétaire des biens de la fiducie et conclut des contrats en son nom propre. Les bénéficiaires ne sont pas responsables du contrat du fiduciaire. Mais si le fiduciaire est également le mandataire, il n'est pas responsable et ce sont les bénéficiaires ou mandants qui le sont. En ce qui concerne le monde extérieur, le mandataire n'existe pas. Il ne peut pas être les deux : soit les bénéficiaires ou mandants sont responsables, soit ils ne le sont pas; soit ils sont propriétaires des biens de la fiducie, soit ils ne le sont pas. Si les bénéficiaires sont responsables et sont propriétaires des biens en tant que mandants d'un mandataire, il est impossible de dire qu'ils ne le sont pas, au motif qu'ils sont « seulement » bénéficiaires d'une fiducie. Ayant accepté d'être des mandants tout en sachant qu'ils sont des bénéficiaires, les mandants peuvent difficilement dire qu'ils n'ont jamais voulu que le mandat prévale sur la simple fiducie. De toute évidence, c'est ce qu'ils voulaient, sinon ils n'auraient jamais accepté d'être des mandants. Il est donc approprié de ne pas tenir compte de la fiducie et de traiter les bénéficiaires comme les propriétaires des biens

51 Cullity, supra, note 34, à la p. 36 (italique ajouté).

de la fiducie, avec toutes les conséquences fiscales qui en découlent, car c'est précisément le statut qu'ils ont accepté.

L'affaire *Trident* a été citée avec approbation dans de nombreuses autres affaires (y compris, indirectement, par la Cour suprême du Canada) pour soutenir la proposition voulant qu'une simple fiducie qui est un mandataire ne doive pas être prise en compte à l'égard de l'impôt[52].

Il est important de noter que l'idée de « ne pas tenir compte » de la fiducie au profit de la relation mandant-mandataire ne signifie pas que la fiducie n'existe pas. Cela veut simplement dire que pour des raisons fiscales et autres, le fiduciaire doit être considéré comme un mandataire plutôt que comme un fiduciaire. Dans l'affaire *0956375 BC Ltd. v. Regional District of Okanagan-Similkameen*, la Cour a déclaré :

> [traduction] À mon avis, il est important de noter que dans l'affaire *Trident*, la Cour n'a pas jugé qu'une simple fiducie créait uniquement une relation mandant-mandataire. Elle a au contraire estimé que dans de telles circonstances, il pouvait y avoir à la fois une relation de fiducie et une relation mandant-mandataire[53].

La Cour a toutefois aussi cité avec approbation le passage suivant d'une édition antérieure de *Waters' Law of Trusts* :

> [traduction] Même lorsque l'intention de créer une relation fiduciaire est très clairement exprimée, il peut y avoir des situations dans lesquelles la relation peut également être qualifiée de relation mandant-mandataire. Il a été avancé que plus les bénéficiaires d'une fiducie exercent un contrôle sur la gestion des actifs de la fiducie, plus la relation est susceptible d'être qualifiée de relation mandant-mandataire. *Il en résulte que les fiduciaires seront traités comme des mandataires et les bénéficiaires seront traités comme des mandants*[54].

52 L'affaire fiscale la plus récente en date de rédaction du présent article est *1084204 BC Ltd. v. His Majesty the King in Right of British Columbia*, 2023 BCSC 2013, aux paragraphes 35-36 (en appel devant la Cour d'appel de la C.-B.) (une affaire reliée à la BC Property Transfer Tax Act dans laquelle j'ai agi comme avocat pour 1084204 BC Ltd.). Comme il est indiqué au paragraphe 36 de cette décision, dans l'affaire *Canada (Procureur général) c. British Columbia Investment Management Corp.*, 2019 CSC 63, au paragraphe 61, la Cour a cité avec approbation *De Mond c. La Reine*, 1999 CanLII 466 (CCI), qui elle-même, au paragraphe 38, cite *Trident*. C'est la raison pour laquelle je dis que la Cour suprême du Canada a cité indirectement avec approbation l'affaire *Trident*.

53 2020 BCSC 743, au paragraphe 78.

54 Ibid., au paragraphe 81, citant Donovan W.M. Waters, Lionel D. Smith et Mark R. Gillen, *Waters' Law of Trusts in Canada*, 4e éd. (Toronto : Carswell, 2012), section 3.III.D.1 (italique ajouté). Flannigan, supra, note 37, à la p. 210, réitère ce point comme suit : « [traduction] Il existe une dualité entre la responsabilité du fiduciaire et celle du mandataire. Les simples fiduciaires, qu'ils soient contrôlés ou non, sont responsables en tant que fiduciaires des actes qui violent d'une certaine manière l'étroite dimension fiduciaire de leur fonction/obligation

Enfin, la Cour a conclu ce qui suit :

> [traduction] J'accepte les affaires *Trident* et *Advanced Glazing* comme précédents à l'appui de la proposition voulant qu'un simple fiduciaire, tel que 447857, puisse également être un mandataire des bénéficiaires de la fiducie. Ces affaires établissent que la *relation mandant-mandataire a préséance* en cas de rupture de contrat ou d'assertion négligente et inexacte par le fiduciaire/mandataire lorsqu'il agit conformément aux directives du bénéficiaire/mandant. Dans ces circonstances, le bénéficiaire/mandant est responsable de la rupture de contrat ou de l'assertion négligente et inexacte commise par le fiduciaire/mandataire[55].

LE PRIVILÈGE DU FIDUCIAIRE

Bien qu'une simple fiducie soit définie comme une fiducie dans laquelle le fiduciaire n'a aucune obligation expresse à remplir autre que celle de remettre sur demande les biens de la fiducie aux bénéficiaires, il convient de se demander si les bénéficiaires peuvent avoir un tel droit.

Comme presque tout le monde le sait, une fiducie est un type de relation juridique plutôt qu'une entité juridique dotée d'une personnalité juridique distincte. Cela signifie que, quoi que fasse le fiduciaire, il le fait à titre personnel, même s'il agit dans le cadre des activités de la fiducie. Comme l'a déclaré le Conseil privé, « [traduction] la personnalité juridique d'un fiduciaire est unitaire[56] ».

consistant à détenir et à maintenir efficacement le domaine légal. *Toutefois, s'ils sont contrôlés dans leur fonction fiduciaire, ils acquièrent simultanément le statut de mandataire* et, en tant que mandataires, rendent les constituants ou les bénéficiaires qui les dirigent responsables vis-à-vis des tiers lésés par leurs actes. En d'autres termes, les simples fiduciaires contrôlés seront responsables en fonction de la capacité à titre de fiduciaire ou de mandataire qui est déclenchée par leurs actes. Par conséquent, il est erroné de supposer qu'un fiduciaire contrôlé est un type de fiduciaire distinct (un amalgame *sui generis* de fiducie et de mandat) assujetti à des règles qui diffèrent des règles applicables aux autres fiduciaires. Un fiduciaire contrôlé a une dimension « fiducie » qui attire les règles ordinaires de la loi régissant les fiducies qui s'appliquent lorsque la question qui se pose concerne la préservation ou la disposition des biens, et une dimension « mandat » distincte qui attire les règles ordinaires du mandat qui s'appliquent aux interactions avec les tiers [italique ajouté] ».

55 *0956375 BC Ltd.*, supra, note 53, au paragraphe 82 (italique ajouté). Comme il a été mentionné plus haut, dans l'affaire *Scoretz*, supra, note 26, la Cour a jugé que les simples fiducies ne sont pas toutes des mandataires. Dans *0956375 BC Ltd.*, au paragraphe 83, la Cour a confirmé cette position (sans toutefois, étrangement, citer l'affaire *Scoretz*, une décision exécutoire de la Cour d'appel de la C.-B.) : « [traduction] Toutefois, ni *Trident* ni *Advanced Glazing* ne vont jusqu'à établir qu'en toutes circonstances, la relation établie par une simple fiducie est une relation mandant-mandataire par opposition à une relation fiduciaire ou que les principes du mandat prédomineront toujours à l'exclusion des principes fiduciaires [italique ajouté par la Cour]. »

56 *Investec Trust (Guernsey) Ltd & Anor v Glenalla Properties Ltd & Ors*, [2018] UKPC 7, au paragraphe 59, sous-alinéa (iii).

Étant donné que le fiduciaire agit à titre personnel, il est responsable personnellement de tout ce qu'il fait, même s'il le fait en tant que fiduciaire[57]. Très peu de personnes accepteraient d'assumer une telle responsabilité et les fiducies disparaîtraient s'il n'existait pas un moyen de contrebalancer ce risque. La réponse de l'equity est de conférer au fiduciaire deux droits : un droit *d'indemnisation*, qui permet au fiduciaire de faire une réclamation à la fiducie pour le remboursement de toute dépense engagée raisonnablement dans l'exercice de ses fonctions fiduciaires[58] et un droit *d'exonération*, qui permet au fiduciaire de faire une réclamation à la fiducie pour le paiement à l'avance des frais à engager sans avoir à les payer lui-même[59].

Une discussion exhaustive de ces droits dépasse le cadre de cet article[60]. Ce qui est important, c'est que, pour garantir les droits du fiduciaire, l'equity lui accorde un privilège en equity sur les actifs de la fiducie. Ce privilège est un droit de propriété, au sens où il s'agit d'une réclamation réelle contre les actifs eux-mêmes et non d'une simple réclamation personnelle contre les bénéficiaires. En outre, le privilège a la priorité sur toutes les autres réclamations contre les actifs de la fiducie[61].

Par conséquent, à moins que l'instrument de fiducie n'élimine expressément le privilège, ce qui serait très étrange, aucun bénéficiaire n'a le droit absolu d'exiger la livraison des actifs de la fiducie, indépendamment de ce que dit l'instrument de fiducie. Le fiduciaire a toujours le droit de retenir suffisamment d'actifs pour couvrir ses dépenses.

Ainsi, lorsqu'on dit d'une simple fiducie qu'il s'agit d'une fiducie dont les bénéficiaires peuvent exiger, et le fiduciaire doit abandonner, le bien fiduciaire, il est entendu que cela est assujetti au privilège du fiduciaire. Cela n'empêche pas la fiducie d'être une simple fiducie. Si c'était le cas, une simple fiducie ne pourrait presque jamais exister.

---

57 Un fiduciaire peut se dégager de sa responsabilité personnelle dans le cadre d'un contrat si l'autre partie accepte expressément de ne recourir qu'aux actifs fiduciaires pour le paiement de toute responsabilité contractuelle.

58 Si les actifs de la fiducie sont insuffisants, le fiduciaire peut, dans certains cas, demander le remboursement des sommes payées aux bénéficiaires.

59 Il n'est pas sûr qu'un fiduciaire puisse demander à être exonéré par un bénéficiaire. D'un point de vue de principe, on pourrait penser que c'est le cas, mais il n'y a pas de précédent sur ce point.

60 Pour une discussion récente, voir Mitchell McInnes, « Unjust Enrichment and Trusts: Restitution and Indemnification in Law and Equity » (2023) 42:2 *Estates, Trusts & Pensions Journal* 108-39.

61 Une analyse approfondie de la nature du privilège figure dans *Equity Trust (Jersey) Ltd v. Halabi (Jersey)*, [2022] UKPC 36.

CONCLUSION

Le concept de simple fiducie ne semble pas particulièrement compliqué : il s'agit d'une fiducie dans laquelle le fiduciaire n'a aucune obligation active, si ce n'est celle de protéger les biens fiduciaires et de les remettre aux bénéficiaires à leur demande. Le fiduciaire peut avoir des obligations passives limitées ou divers pouvoirs, ou les deux, tout en restant un simple fiduciaire.

Un simple fiduciaire peut également être, mais n'est pas nécessairement, le mandataire des bénéficiaires, à condition qu'il existe un contrat leur donnant un contrôle suffisant sur le fiduciaire pour créer une relation mandant-mandataire.

Si le simple fiduciaire est également mandataire, alors, en l'absence de faits indiquant le contraire, l'aspect mandat de la relation prédomine et il n'est pas tenu compte de la fiducie à l'égard de l'impôt (et de certaines autres fins).

POSTSCRIPTUM

Le 12 août 2024, après la rédaction de cet article et sa préparation pour la publication, la ministre des Finances a publié un avant-projet de loi apportant diverses modifications techniques à la Loi[62]. Des notes explicatives sur l'avant-projet de loi ont été publiées un peu plus tard[63].

En vertu de l'article 12 de l'avant-projet de loi, qui s'applique aux années d'imposition se terminant le 30 décembre 2024, le paragraphe 104(1) est abrogé et remplacé comme suit :

> 104(1) Dans la présente loi, la mention d'une fiducie ou d'une succession (appelées « fiducie » à la présente sous-section) vaut également mention, sauf indication contraire du contexte, du fiduciaire, de l'exécuteur testamentaire, de l'administrateur successoral, du liquidateur de succession, de l'héritier ou d'un autre représentant légal ayant la propriété ou le contrôle des biens de la fiducie. Toutefois, sauf pour l'application du présent paragraphe, du paragraphe (1.1), du sous-alinéa b)(v) de la définition de *disposition* au paragraphe 248(1) et de l'alinéa k) de cette définition, l'arrangement dans le cadre duquel il est raisonnable de considérer qu'une fiducie agit en qualité de mandataire de l'ensemble de ses bénéficiaires pour ce qui est des opérations portant sur ses biens est réputé ne pas être une fiducie, sauf si la fiducie est visée à l'un des alinéas a) à e.1) de la définition de *fiducie* au paragraphe 108(1).

62 Canada, ministère des Finances, *Propositions législatives relatives à la Loi de l'impôt sur le revenu et au Règlement de l'impôt sur le revenu* (modifications techniques) (Ottawa : ministère des Finances, août 2024) (ci-après « l'avant-projet de loi »).

63 Canada, ministère des Finances, *Notes explicatives sur des propositions législatives liées à la Loi de l'impôt sur le revenu et à son règlement* (modifications techniques) (Ottawa : ministère des Finances, août 2024) (ci-après « les notes explicatives »).

Il convient de noter que, contrairement à la version précédente du paragraphe 104(1), il n'est pas fait mention de l'article 150. Par conséquent, si on s'arrêtait ici, la règle actuelle voulant que les simples fiducies ne soient pas tenues de produire une déclaration de revenus continuerait de s'appliquer. La note explicative relative à cet article confirme que l'intention est d'inclure les simples fiducies[64]. Elle précise :

> Le paragraphe 104(1) prévoit, à l'exception de l'application de certaines dispositions déterminées, que la mention d'une fiducie dans la Loi est considérée comme excluant les arrangements dans le cadre desquels il est raisonnable de considérer que la fiducie agit en qualité de mandataire de ses bénéficiaires pour ce qui est des opérations portant sur ses biens. On parle alors généralement de « simples fiducies ». [...]
>
> Le paragraphe 104(1) est modifié de façon à éliminer le renvoi à l'article 150. Par conséquent, les accords de propriété effective qui ne sont pas autrement traités comme une fiducie pour l'application de la Loi ne seront assujettis aux exigences en matière de déclaration de la propriété effective que s'ils sont réputés être des fiducies en vertu du nouveau paragraphe 150(1.3)[65].

Cependant, comme l'indique cette note, ce n'est pas toute l'histoire. Le paragraphe 150(1.1) ajoute qu'un particulier (qui comprend une fiducie non testamentaire) n'a pas à produire de déclaration en vertu du paragraphe 150(1) (y compris surtout l'alinéa 150(1)c)), sauf si certaines conditions s'appliquent. Ce paragraphe demeure assujetti au paragraphe 150(1.2).

Le paragraphe 34(2) de l'avant-projet de loi révise le paragraphe 150(1.2). Révisé, le paragraphe 150(1.1) ne s'applique pas au terme non défini « fiducie expresse » (de sorte que l'alinéa 150(1)c) s'applique à ces fiducies), sauf si une des exceptions prévues au paragraphe 150(1.2) révisé s'applique. Ces exceptions sont les suivantes :

- la fiducie existe depuis moins de trois mois à la fin de l'année d'imposition (alinéa 150(1.2)a));
- une fiducie dont chaque fiduciaire est un particulier, dont les bénéficiaires sont liés à chaque fiduciaire, et dont la valeur des actifs ne dépasse pas 250 000 $ tout au long de l'année[66] et qui n'est constituée de rien d'autre

64 L'analyse de ce point dépasse le cadre de cet article, mais les lecteurs et lectrices qui vivent dans les provinces qui n'ont pas abrogé le Statute of Uses, 27 Hen. 8, c. 10, peuvent se demander s'il est même possible d'avoir une simple fiducie ou si la fiducie serait considérée avoir été exécutée, de sorte que le bénéficiaire détiendrait non seulement le domaine en equity mais aussi le domaine en common law dans tout bien fiduciaire ainsi que le titre de propriété y afférent. Voir *R v. Shon Yee Benevolent Association of Canada*, 1991 CanLII 2291 (BCSC), au paragraphe 21.

65 Supra, note 63, à l'article 12.

66 Il est à se demander comment il est possible de contrôler les valeurs des actions des sociétés ouvertes ou des fonds communs de placement, seconde par seconde, tout au long de l'année, afin de s'assurer qu'elles ne dépassent pas la limite de 250 000 $.

qu'une longue liste d'actifs comme des espèces, des certificats de dépôt garanti ou divers titres de créance, actions de sociétés ouvertes et fonds communs de placement (mais pas les actions d'une société privée) (alinéa 150(1.2)b.1) proposé);

- une fiducie qui est tenue, selon les règles pertinentes de conduite professionnelle ou des lois du Canada ou d'une province (mais pas d'un territoire), de détenir des fonds pour l'activité qui est réglementée en vertu de ces règles ou de ces lois, pourvu que, selon le cas a) la fiducie ne soit pas utilisée comme une fiducie distincte pour un ou plusieurs clients donnés, ou b) les seuls actifs détenus par la fiducie tout au long de l'année soient des espèces d'une valeur qui n'excède pas 250 000 $ (alinéa 150(1.2)c) révisé);
- une fiducie est établie pour se conformer à une disposition législative fédérale ou provinciale (mais pas territoriale) selon laquelle la personne ou les personnes agissant comme fiduciaires de la fiducie doivent détenir des biens dans la fiducie à une fin déterminée (alinéa 150(1.2)q) proposé).

En vertu du paragraphe 34(4) de l'avant-projet de loi, le paragraphe 150(1.3), tel qu'il est abordé dans le corps de cet article, est abrogé. Selon le paragraphe 34(6), l'abrogation s'applique aux années d'imposition se terminant après le 30 décembre 2024. Comme les fiducies non testamentaires ont une année d'imposition qui suit l'année civile, l'abrogation s'applique pour l'entièreté de 2024[67]. Le ministère du Revenu national a ordonné qu'elle ne s'applique pas pour 2023. Cela signifie, dans les faits, que le paragraphe 150(1.3) n'a jamais vraiment été en vigueur.

En vertu du paragraphe 34(5) de l'avant-projet de loi, un nouveau paragraphe 150(1.3) est édicté (par le paragraphe 34(7), en vigueur pour les années d'imposition qui se terminent après le 30 décembre 2025 — donc, pour l'année civile 2025). En vertu du nouveau paragraphe 150(1.3), le terme « fiducie expresse » est réputé comprendre un arrangement visé (et ainsi la fiducie présumée sera visée par le paragraphe 150(1.2), qui s'applique aux fiducies expresses et, par conséquent, la fiducie présumée ne sera pas visée par le paragraphe 150(1.1) et, par conséquent, la fiducie présumée sera tenue de produire des déclarations en vertu de l'alinéa 150(1)c)) si certaines conditions sont réunies.

Les notes explicatives précisent que l'objet de cette nouvelle règle déterminative vise à mieux définir les « simples fiducies » à l'aide de la division traditionnelle en equity entre la propriété en equity et celle en common law :

67 Ce que confirme la note explicative relative à ce paragraphe, supra, note 63, à l'article 34 : « La modification visant à abroger le paragraphe 150(1.3) s'applique aux années d'imposition se terminant après le 30 décembre 2024. Cela signifie que les « simples fiducies » ne seront pas tenues de produire des déclarations pour les années d'imposition se terminant le 31 décembre 2024. »

> Le paragraphe 150(1.3) est remplacé par un nouveau libellé afin de fournir plus de certitude et de définir ce qui constitue une « fiducie simple » pour l'application des exigences en matière de déclaration de la propriété effective. Ce nouveau paragraphe repose sur le concept de fiducie existant de la division de la propriété de common law et de la propriété effective et est destiné, sous réserve des exceptions prévues au paragraphe 150(1.31), à saisir ces arrangements qui constitueraient normalement une fiducie simple. Cette modification ainsi que les exceptions mentionnées au nouveau paragraphe 150(1.31) sont destinées à fournir plus de précisions quant aux arrangements assujettis aux règles de déclaration[68].

Si l'accord est réputé être une fiducie expresse, le propriétaire légal du bien est réputé être un fiduciaire de cette fiducie et les personnes ou sociétés de personnes ayant droit à l'usage ou à l'avantage du bien[69] détenu par la fiducie expresse présumée sont réputées être des bénéficiaires de la fiducie présumée :

> 150(1.3) Pour l'application du présent article et de l'article 204.2 du *Règlement de l'impôt sur le revenu* :
>
> a) une fiducie expresse est réputée comprendre un arrangement dans le cadre duquel, à la fois :
>
> (i) une ou plusieurs personnes (appelées « propriétaire légal » au présent paragraphe et au paragraphe (1.31)) ont la propriété de common law du bien qui est détenu pour l'usage ou l'avantage d'une ou plusieurs personnes ou sociétés de personnes,
>
> (ii) il est raisonnable de considérer que le propriétaire légal agit en qualité de mandataire des personnes ou sociétés de personnes ayant le droit d'usage ou bénéficiant du bien;
>
> b) chaque personne qui est un propriétaire légal d'un arrangement visé à l'alinéa a) est réputée être un fiduciaire de la fiducie;
>
> c) chaque personne ou société de personnes ayant le droit d'usage ou bénéficiant du bien aux termes d'un arrangement visé à l'alinéa a) est réputé être un bénéficiaire de la fiducie.

Plusieurs points peuvent être relevés à la première lecture du nouveau paragraphe. Premièrement, les biens détenus pour l'usage ou l'avantage des bénéficiaires réputés ne sont pas réputés être des biens de la fiducie. On peut se demander si cela répond à l'exigence voulant qu'une fiducie expresse ait une « certitude de la propriété ».

68 Ibid. Cet article n'est pas le lieu pour le faire, mais on peut s'interroger sur l'utilisation du terme « propriété effective » par la note dans ce contexte. Ce terme est difficile à définir et ne s'applique probablement pas dans le sens où la note l'utilise dans de nombreux accords de fiducie. Le terme « intérêts en equity » aurait probablement été plus approprié.

69 Il est curieux que la législation fasse une distinction entre « l'usage » et « l'avantage ». Il est difficile de comprendre comment on peut avoir l'usage d'un bien sans en avoir l'avantage. Peut-être la distinction a-t-elle été faite pour plus de certitude.

Deuxièmement, les « sociétés de personnes » sont considérées comme quelque chose de plus qu'un ensemble de personnes, ce qui est étrange, car cette disposition n'a rien à voir avec le calcul des revenus de la société de personnes, de sorte que la société de personnes n'est pas traitée comme si elle était une personne distincte en vertu du paragraphe 96(1).

Troisièmement, le mandat décrit est « compris » dans une fiducie expresse, ce qui laisse entendre que les fiducies expresses peuvent comprendre d'autres accords s'apparentant à un mandat.

Enfin, la note marginale sur le paragraphe 150(1.3) proposé ne fait plus référence à une « simple fiducie » mais à une « fiducie présumée ». Peut-être devrions-nous inventer un nouveau terme et parler de « fiducies de mandat » plutôt que de « simples fiducies ».

Le libellé du sous-alinéa 150(1.3)a)(ii) proposé, comme celui du paragraphe 104(1), est curieux. Il indique qu'il s'applique quand « il est raisonnable de considérer que » le propriétaire légal agit en qualité de mandataire. Comme nous l'avons vu dans le corps de cet article, il n'y a mandat que lorsque le mandant exerce un contrôle sur les actions du mandataire au moyen d'un accord contractuel (ou dans le cadre de certains accords implicites de mandat). On ne voit pas très bien comment il peut être « raisonnable de considérer que » quelqu'un est un mandant s'il ne l'est pas vraiment.

Il n'y a pas de règle sans exception. Par conséquent, le paragraphe 150(1.31) proposé dresse une longue liste de situations dans lesquelles le paragraphe 150(1.3) ne s'applique pas. Par exemple, tous les bénéficiaires sont également des fiduciaires et aucun fiduciaire n'est pas également un bénéficiaire (alinéa 150(1.31)a) proposé)[70]; les fiduciaires sont des particuliers qui sont des personnes liées et le bien est un bien immeuble qui serait la résidence principale de l'un ou plusieurs des propriétaires (alinéa 150(1.3)b))[71]; ou le propriétaire légal est un particulier et le bien est un bien immeuble qui, à la fois : a) est détenu pour l'usage ou l'avantage de son époux ou conjoint de fait au cours de l'année, b) serait la résidence principale du propriétaire légal pour l'année, s'il l'avait désigné ainsi selon la définition de résidence principale à l'article 54 pour l'année[72].

À n'en pas douter, le ministère des Finances recevra une avalanche de suggestions d'autres exceptions.

En résumé, l'avant-projet de loi prévoit que, sous réserve de nombreuses exceptions, les fiducies qui agissent en tant que mandataires doivent produire une

70 Selon les notes explicatives, cette disposition vise les comptes bancaires conjoints.

71 Cette disposition vise les situations où un parent est sur le titre pour permettre à un enfant d'obtenir un prêt hypothécaire.

72 Cette disposition vise les situations où les époux occupent conjointement un foyer familial, mais seulement un époux est sur le titre.

déclaration de revenus pour l'année 2025 et les années d'imposition suivantes. Les contribuables et leurs conseillers disposent maintenant d'un peu moins de 18 mois pour déterminer si cette législation s'applique à eux. Comme l'indiquent les notes explicatives :

> La modification visant à ajouter la nouvelle version du paragraphe 150(1.3) s'applique aux années d'imposition se terminant après le 30 décembre 2025. Par conséquent, elle serait premièrement applicable aux années d'imposition se terminant le 31 décembre 2025. Cette modification est destinée à accorder suffisamment de temps aux contribuables et à leurs conseillers afin de tenir compte de leurs circonstances à la lumière des nouveaux paragraphes 150(1.3) et (1.31)[73].

On ne peut qu'espérer que ce sera en effet le cas[74].

73 Supra, note 63, à l'article 34.

74 L'avant-projet de loi modifie également le Règlement de l'impôt sur le revenu en ce qui concerne les exigences supplémentaires en matière de déclaration pour les fiducies. En vertu du paragraphe 204.2(1) du Règlement, les fiducies (sauf celles énumérées au paragraphe 150(1.2)) qui doivent produire une déclaration de revenus doivent également fournir des renseignements supplémentaires, notamment le nom, l'adresse, la date de naissance, la province de résidence et le numéro d'identification de contribuable de tous les fiduciaires, bénéficiaires et constituants (au sens du paragraphe 17(15)) de la fiducie (ainsi que de certaines personnes influentes, comme les protecteurs). Le paragraphe 204.2(1) du Règlement est modifié de sorte que les fiducies (autres que celles énumérées au paragraphe 150(1.2)) qui doivent produire une déclaration de revenus doivent également produire les renseignements prescrits sur la propriété effective de la fiducie. Le règlement révisé s'applique maintenant à une société de personnes qui est un bénéficiaire. Le nouveau paragraphe 204.2(3) du Règlement définit le terme « constituant » comme toute personne ou société de personnes qui a directement ou indirectement, de quelque manière que ce soit, transféré un bien à la fiducie, à l'exception d'un transfert effectué par la personne ou la société de personnes à la fiducie en contrepartie d'une juste valeur marchande ou en vertu d'une obligation légale d'effectuer le transfert.

CANADIAN TAX JOURNAL / REVUE FISCALE CANADIENNE (2024) 72:3, 723-47
https://doi.org/10.32721/ctj.2024.72.3.ctp

Corporate Tax Planning

Co-Editors: Mark Brender,* Brian R. Carr,** Michael R. Smith,*** and Christopher J. Steeves****

MAKING SENSE OF CANADA'S CLEAN ENERGY INVESTMENT TAX CREDITS

*Colena Der and Edward Rowe******

To advance Canada's transition to a green economy, the federal government has introduced a number of tax incentives intended to help fund the capital cost of qualifying clean energy projects. This article discusses six new clean energy investment tax credits (ITCs), four of which were included in legislation enacted in June 2024. The authors outline the design elements of these clean energy ITCs and provide details of the terms and conditions that apply, or are proposed to apply, in each case.

KEYWORDS: INVESTMENT TAX CREDITS ■ ENERGY POLICY ■ TAX INCENTIVES ■ CAPITAL INVESTMENTS

CONTENTS

* Of Osler Hoskin & Harcourt LLP, Montreal (e-mail: mbrender@osler.com).

** Of Thorsteinssons LLP, Toronto (e-mail: bcarr@thor.ca).

*** Of Deloitte LLP, Calgary (e-mail: michaesmith@deloitte.ca).

**** Of Fasken Martineau DuMoulin LLP, Toronto (e-mail: csteeves@fasken.com).

***** Of Osler Hoskin & Harcourt LLP. We wish to thank James Chang and Ilana Ludwin for their contributions to this article.

INTRODUCTION

The government of Canada has made ambitious commitments to reduce the carbon footprint of the Canadian economy. Tax policy is a cornerstone of the government's plan to encourage and support capital investments in Canada to meet these commitments, and several tax incentives have been announced. These incentives include

- numerous investment tax credits (ITCs);
- accelerated capital cost allowance (CCA);
- temporary corporate tax rate reductions for taxpayers engaged in manufacturing activities that support the clean energy transition; and
- expansion of the flowthrough share regime and the introduction of a tax credit for individuals who support critical mineral mining.

This article focuses on, and provides an overview of, the ITCs that the Canadian government has announced to date with respect to its stated commitment to encourage a green economy. These consist of the following (collectively, "the clean energy ITCs"):

- the carbon capture, utilization, and storage (CCUS) ITC,
- the clean technology ITC,
- the clean hydrogen ITC,
- the clean technology manufacturing ITC,
- the clean electricity ITC, and
- the electric vehicle ITC.

Together, the clean energy ITCs are intended to encourage the development and adoption of technologies that produce low-carbon energy sources, reduce or abate industrial carbon emissions, and/or support the establishment of a supply chain in Canada for the equipment needed to transition to a green economy. The introduction of these ITCs is in large part a response to the US government's Inflation Reduction Act of 2022[1] (IRA), which contained an expansive offering of tax incentives to support the clean energy sector in the United States. Canada was on the defensive following the enactment of the IRA and wanted to offer a suite of tax incentives that would allow Canada to remain attractive to capital investors and proponents of clean energy projects. In this article, we discuss some of the more notable differences between the Canadian and the US approaches, particularly in the design of the tax credits and their potential impact on both the financial viability of clean energy projects and the attraction of investment capital to support those projects.

Legislation implementing four of the clean energy ITCs listed above has been enacted;[2] the exceptions are the clean electricity ITC and the electric vehicle ITC, for which draft legislation is pending.

In the first part of the article, we review the key design elements that apply, more or less consistently, across this suite of clean energy ITCs. In the second part, we review in greater detail the terms and conditions of each of the clean energy ITCs.

KEY DESIGN ELEMENTS OF THE CLEAN ENERGY ITCs: AN OVERVIEW

The *Income Tax Act*[3] (Canada) has included provisions for various ITCs for several decades. The federal government has used ITCs to encourage capital investments in

1 Pub. L. no. 117-169.

2 The CCUS ITC and the clean technology ITC were enacted by Bill C-59, An Act To Implement Certain Provisions of the Fall Economic Statement Tabled in Parliament on November 21, 2023 and Certain Provisions of the Budget Tabled in Parliament on March 28, 2023, enacted by SC 2024, c. 15; royal assent June 20, 2024. The clean hydrogen ITC and the clean technology manufacturing ITC were enacted by Bill C-69, An Act To Implement Certain Provisions of the Budget Tabled in Parliament on April 16, 2024, enacted by SC 2024, c. 17; royal assent June 20, 2024.

3 RSC 1985, c. 1 (5th Supp.), as amended (herein referred to as "the Act"). Unless otherwise stated, statutory references in this article are to the Act.

certain areas (such as scientific research and development), certain sectors (such as manufacturing and resource development), and certain regions (such as Atlantic Canada). Therefore, the government's decision to use an ITC approach to providing incentives for a greener economy is not altogether surprising. It allows the legislative drafters to leverage the longstanding technical regime for ITCs, and the certainty provided by the judicial consideration of that regime, so as to encourage the capital investment needed to facilitate Canada's transition to a green economy and to capture the economic opportunities of the global climate change movement. However, notwithstanding the choice to adopt a familiar statutory framework, the government did deviate (in some cases, markedly) from past ITC practices in the design of the clean energy ITCs. These differences are highlighted below.

The comments in this section focus on the four ITCs that have been enacted into law—the CCUS ITC, the clean technology ITC, the clean hydrogen ITC, and the clean technology manufacturing ITC—and the clean electricity ITC, for which the government has provided substantial details regarding the scope and conditions of the credit. Only limited details of the electric vehicle ITC were announced in the 2024 federal budget,[4] and more information is not expected until the fall of 2024.

The key elements of the clean energy ITCs are summarized in table 1.

Offset to Capital Cost of Eligible Properties

The purpose of the clean energy ITCs is to help fund the capital cost of qualifying clean energy projects. Accordingly, the amount of each ITC is based on a specified percentage of the capital cost of property that is eligible for the credit. The credits are also largely focused on investment in new projects in Canada, as illustrated by the general restriction of the clean energy ITCs to new equipment situated in Canada and intended for use exclusively in Canada. Notable exceptions to this general restriction are the CCUS ITC and the clean electricity ITC, which are also available for the capital cost of refurbishing eligible property in Canada.

The federal government has introduced other programs in addition to the clean energy ITCs to help fund the capital needs of energy transition projects (including programs operated under the Canada infrastructure bank, the Canada growth fund, and the strategic investment fund). Provincial governments have also introduced their own programs in this area. To the extent that a project owner plans to rely on multiple forms of governmental assistance, it needs to be aware that these other sources of funding may reduce its entitlement under the ITC provisions (or vice versa).

Specifically, it is important to note that the eligible expenditure base for each of the enacted clean energy ITCs other than the CCUS ITC is reduced by any government or non-government assistance that

4 Canada, Department of Finance, 2024 Budget, April 16, 2024.

TABLE 1 Key Elements of Canada's Clean Energy ITCs

ITC rate	ITC rate varies between 15% and 60%, with reduction in the phaseout period
Refundable	Yes (except unknown for the electric vehicle ITC)
Eligible claimants	Taxable Canadian corporations (except for the clean electricity ITC)
Labour requirements	Need to satisfy in order to access highest ITC rate; when not satisfied, ITC rate is reduced by 10 percentage points Applicable to all except the clean technology manufacturing ITC and the electric vehicle ITC (for which these requirements are assumed not to apply)
Eligibility period	Varies from 2022 to 2040, each with specific phaseout periods
When ITCs may be claimed	Upon acquired property becoming "available for use" (except for the CCUS ITC, which is available as costs are incurred, and unknown for the electric vehicle ITC)
Eligible properties	Defined separately for each ITC
Eligible expenditures	New equipment only, except that refurbishment costs are also eligible under the CCUS and clean electricity ITCs
Pre-claim approval	Required for CCUS, clean hydrogen, and abated natural gas projects for clean electricity Further validation after project goes in-service Post-claim audit for all

CCUS = carbon capture, utilization, and storage; ITC = investment tax credit.

- the taxpayer, at the time of filing the tax return for the year in which the property is acquired, has received, is entitled to receive, or can reasonably be expected to receive; and
- can reasonably be considered to be in respect of the property.

In the case of the CCUS ITC, the reduction applies only where the taxpayer receives non-government assistance.

Given how broadly "assistance" is defined, assistance can reduce the ITC expenditure base even before it is actually received and may capture many of the other forms of funding offered through federal and provincial programs.

The legislation does provide a mechanism for restoring the ITC expenditure base in the event that the taxpayer repays the assistance or is no longer entitled to the assistance.

Refundability

All of the clean energy ITCs are refundable, except that in the case of the electric vehicle ITC, the government has not expressly indicated whether the credit is refundable or not. Where an ITC is refundable, it is first applied to offset any income taxes owing by the claimant, with any remainder being refunded in cash.

The fact that these ITCs are refundable is a marked departure from the federal government's typical approach to ITCs. In the recent past, only the scientific research and experimental development ITC was refundable, and only for Canadian-controlled private corporations.

When the government announced that it was planning to introduce an ITC to support CCUS projects—the first of the suite of clean energy ITCs to be announced—the government initiated a public consultation on the design of the tax credit. Given the significant cost, long construction period, and slow financial return associated with adopting new technology, one of the key comments provided by stakeholders was that the CCUS ITC needed to be refundable in order to have a meaningful impact, and to ensure that CCUS projects would be economically viable and attractive to capital investors. The government responded to this feedback and allowed the CCUS ITC to be refundable, and consistently adopted this approach for the other clean energy ITCs.

Limited Group of Eligible Claimants

The clean energy ITCs are available only to a limited group of persons. In most cases, eligible claimants are limited to "taxable Canadian corporations," including such corporations that own an eligible project through a partnership.

The group of eligible persons is slightly broadened for the clean technology ITC to include a "mutual fund trust" that is a "real estate investment trust" (including such a trust that is a member of a partnership).

The clean electricity ITC also is expected to be available to a wider class of eligible persons, which includes (in addition to taxable Canadian corporations) provincial and territorial Crown corporations (provided that they meet certain additional requirements), corporations owned by municipalities, pension investment corporations, and corporations owned by Indigenous communities. The significantly broader eligibility for the clean electricity ITC is in recognition of, and response to, the fact that a significant portion of the electricity-producing infrastructure in Canada is owned and supported by provincial/territorial governments and pension funds, and the fact that, as part of reconciliation, Indigenous communities desire to invest, and all levels of government are providing support in order for them to invest, in these infrastructure projects.

Partnerships

Subject to the specific requirements of each ITC, an eligible claimant is generally entitled to a clean energy ITC where the claimant has made the investment in the eligible property or equipment through a partnership. Where an eligible project is held through a partnership (and therefore the expenditures eligible for the tax credit are incurred by the partnership), the partners of the partnership that are eligible for the credit can claim their share of credit. The partnership is treated as if it were a taxable Canadian corporation (and as if its fiscal period were the particular taxation year) in computing the amount of the clean energy ITC available in respect of eligible property or equipment owned by the partnership.

However, there are additional requirements and considerations that apply where the investment is held through a partnership, including the following:

1. *Allocation of credits among partners.* The allocation of credits among partners must be reasonable, and credits are subject to reallocation if the allocation is not reasonable:
   a. The "reasonable allocation" requirement is found in section 103 and is of general application to partnerships.
   b. The legislation for the enacted clean energy ITCs contains an additional specific rule requiring the allocation of the credit among the partners to be reasonable and permitting the Canada Revenue Agency to reallocate where it considers the allocation to be unreasonable, having regard to the capital that each partner invested or the work that each partner performed for the partnership, or other such factors that may be relevant.
   c. Circumstances in which there may be heightened scrutiny on the allocation include
      i. a mix of partners that are eligible and non-eligible for the credit, and
      ii. allocations that are not aligned with the funding of the capital expenditures for the project.
2. *At-risk amount limitation.* Where the project is held through a limited partnership, a limited partner's entitlement to the clean energy ITCs generated by partnership expenditures is limited to its "at-risk amount" at the time the credits are allocated:
   a. Very generally, a limited partner's at-risk amount is its invested capital plus allocated tax income, minus distributions, allocated tax losses, and other deductions.
   b. Debt typically constitutes a large portion of the financing for the type of project targeted by the clean energy ITCs. For commercial reasons, such debt is often incurred by the project participants at the partnership level; therefore, the debt financing is not included in the partners' at-risk amounts.
   c. Accelerated tax depreciation is typically available for many of the project assets; this, if claimed, reduces the partners' at-risk amounts.
   d. Taken together, the placement of project financing and the potential for accelerated tax depreciation mean that the at-risk limitation may act as a practical reduction of the partners' entitlement to the clean energy ITCs if it is not properly modelled and monitored.

Timing of Claims: The "Available for Use" Criterion

With the exception of the CCUS ITC, the clean energy ITCs can be claimed only after the eligible property becomes "available for use" for tax depreciation purposes:

- There are specific, and technical, rules in the Act defining when a property is considered to be "available for use." Very generally, the base rule is that a property is considered to have become available for use when it is, or is capable of being, put into its intended commercial use.
- Two exceptions to this general rule are the "two-year rolling start rule" and the long-term project election, which allow owners to elect to treat property as being "available for use" before it is ready for commercial use. The two-year rolling start rule allows a property to be treated as "available for use" in the second taxation year that follows the year in which the property was acquired. The long-term project election generally limits the application of the available-for-use requirement in the third and subsequent years of construction to expenditures in excess of certain threshold amounts.

In the case of the CCUS ITC, the tax credit may be claimed as the expenditures on eligible property are incurred. This is a significant (and favourable) departure from Canada's general approach to ITCs. This design concession was made by the government in response to stakeholder input on the financial cost and risk of these projects, and the need for the credit to be available as the project is being constructed in order for it to serve as a true source of financial support.

Tax Treatment of Clean Energy ITCs

Once a clean energy ITC is claimed, the amount claimed reduces the following tax attributes that would otherwise have been available to the claimant:

- the adjusted cost base (ACB) of the related capital asset for the purposes of determining the claimant's capital gain or loss arising on a subsequent disposition of that asset; and
- the undepreciated capital cost (UCC) of the class of assets in which the related capital asset is included, and consequently the taxpayer's entitlement to a CCA deduction.

Where the UCC of the asset class (which may include other assets not eligible for a clean energy ITC) becomes negative, recapture of depreciation will typically result. To the extent that the clean energy ITC claim cannot be applied to reduce the applicable UCC balance and capital cost for the related asset, owing to timing or technical requirements, the credit received will generally be taxable as income to the recipient.

The ACB and UCC deductions generally apply in the same manner where the asset eligible for the clean energy ITC is held by a partnership; that is, the partnership's capital cost in the asset and the UCC of the class of assets available for a CCA deduction will be correspondingly reduced.

The reduction of the ACB of capital assets and of the depreciation base reflected in UCC to the extent of ITCs received is typical under the ITC regime in Canada, but often comes as a surprise to project proponents that are not familiar with the Canadian tax regime. In practice, this treatment results in erosion of the direct value of the

ITCs because there is a corresponding loss of tax depreciation (and/or the creation of a latent capital gain) in respect of any portion of the cost of an eligible asset that is funded by an ITC. The same result follows for any portion of the cost of an eligible asset that is funded by a provincial ITC.

A partner claiming the clean energy ITC will also have the cost base of its interest in the partnership reduced by the amount of the ITC received. This design aspect of the clean energy ITCs is presumably intended to thwart any attempt to avoid the capital gain that would otherwise arise on a sale of the eligible assets by the partnership after ITCs have been claimed. However, it can also be a trap for the unwary, since there are various circumstances that could result in triggering double taxation of the same economic gain. One such circumstance would be a sale of the partnership by the original project proponent to a new owner (causing a gain to be realized on the sale of the partnership interest to the extent of ITCs claimed) followed by a sale of some or all of the assets of the partnership by the new owner (which would not receive any recognition for the gain realized by the original project proponent).

Clean Energy ITCs Subject to Recapture

All of the enacted clean energy ITCs are also subject to recapture, which effectively requires the claimants to repay the ITCs to the government if the property in respect of which the credit is claimed

- ceases to be used for an eligible purpose,
- is exported out of Canada, or
- is disposed of within a specified period of time (20 years in the case of the CCUS ITC and the clean hydrogen ITC, and 10 years for the clean technology ITC, the clean electricity ITC, and the clean technology manufacturing ITC).

The amount recaptured is based on the fair market value (FMV) of the property at the time of the event triggering the recapture. For example, if the FMV of the property is equal to or exceeds the cost of the property, the ITC is fully recaptured. If the FMV of the property is less than the cost of the property, the ITC will be recaptured as a proportion of the recovered value relative to the cost of the property.

The recapture provisions apply to dispositions both between arm's-length parties and between non-arm's-length parties with limited exceptions. The exceptions to the recapture rules are not the same between the different clean energy ITCs. Although this discrepancy was flagged during the consultation process, the government did not align the recapture rules in the final legislation.

Labour Requirements

With the exception of the clean technology manufacturing ITC (and presumably the electric vehicle ITC), clean energy ITC claimants must satisfy requirements to pay prevailing wages to labourers and to meet a minimum number of apprenticeship hours (collectively, "the labour requirements") in order to access the maximum credit rate.[5] If the labour requirements are not met, the ITC rate is reduced by 10 percentage points (for example, a 30 percent rate would be reduced to 20 percent). The discretion rests with the project owner to elect (or not elect) to be subject to the labour requirements and access the maximum ITC rate.

Each of the "prevailing wage" component and the "apprenticeship hours" component applies to all "covered workers"[6] at a "designated work site"[7] of the claimant. To meet these requirements, the claimant must satisfy the following conditions:

1. Under the prevailing wage component, covered workers must be paid in accordance with an "eligible collective agreement" or in an amount at least equal to the amount of wages and benefits in the "eligible collective agreement" most closely aligned with the covered worker's experience level, tasks, and location.[8]
2. Under the apprenticeship hours requirement, the taxpayer (claimant) must make reasonable efforts
   a. to ensure that registered apprentices work at least 10 percent of the total labour hours that would be performed by a worker in a "red seal" trade; and
   b. if a collective agreement restricts the number of apprenticeship hours worked, to ensure that the highest possible percentage of labour hours worked is performed by registered apprentices when certain conditions are met.

Taxpayers that elect to claim the higher ITC rates applicable under the labour requirement rules but fail to satisfy those rules are subject to the following punitive consequences:

1. *Penalties for failure to meet the prevailing wages requirement.* If a covered worker is not paid prevailing wages, the claimant is
   a. liable to pay an additional tax of $20 for each day in the taxation year that the covered worker was not paid the prevailing wage; and

5 The labour requirements apply in respect of eligible property prepared or installed on or after November 28, 2023.

6 "Covered workers" is defined to mean workers who are engaged in the preparation or installation of property that is eligible for a specified tax credit and whose work is primarily manual or physical in nature. Covered workers include employees of the ITC claimant or of any other person or partnership (a contractor or subcontractor) that is engaged in the preparation or installation of eligible property.

7 A "designated work site" means a work site where eligible property of the incentive claimant is located during the year. This definition does not require that the work site belong to the ITC claimant or be under the claimant's control.

8 In provinces other than Quebec, the "eligible collective agreement" is generally a collective agreement for the relevant industry and the type of work performed that aligns with the worker's duties and location. In Quebec, the eligible collective agreements are those negotiated under relevant provincial law.

b. liable to pay a top-up amount generally equal to the difference between the prevailing wages and the amount that the covered worker was actually paid. If the top-up amount is not paid, a further penalty could be applied equal to 120 percent of the top-up amount.

2. *Penalty for failure to meet the apprenticeship hours requirement.* If the apprenticeship hours requirement is not met, the claimant is liable to pay an additional tax equal to $100 multiplied by the difference between the number of hours that were required to have been performed by apprentices and the number of hours of labour that were actually performed by apprentices.

Gross negligence penalties may also apply if a claimant failed to meet any of the labour requirements knowingly or in circumstances amounting to gross negligence.

NOTABLE DIFFERENCES BETWEEN THE CANADIAN AND US APPROACHES TO CLEAN ENERGY TAX CREDITS

Despite the stated intention to ensure that Canada remains competitive, Canada did not match the US approach in terms of the type and design of clean energy tax credits offered.

Type of Tax Credits Available

Most notably, Canada has restricted the available tax credits to ITCs—credits based on a specified percentage of the capital expenditures on eligible equipment and properties. The United States adopted both ITCs and production tax credits (PTCs)—credits based on the production from eligible projects.

Through public consultations on the clean energy ITCs and other forums, the Canadian government received feedback from interested parties that it should consider adopting a production-based tax incentive, both as part of a competitive response to the IRA and because PTCs most clearly reward investment that successfully achieves a green energy objective (rather than simply the fact of an investment). The difference in the potential amount of credits based on expenditure and credits based on production is obvious, as is the benefit to project proponents of having the flexibility to choose the credit that best addresses the particular challenges of their project.

The Act does not contain any tax incentives that are analogous to a PTC. It appears that the Canadian government has chosen not to introduce a similar tax incentive in its approach to supporting the clean energy sector owing to competing legislative priorities and the complexities of designing and implementing a regime for first-time use.

Transferability

As noted above, all of the enacted clean energy ITCs are refundable; however, they are not transferable. In contrast, not all of the US tax credits are refundable, but the credits are transferable, as expressly permitted by legislation or through accepted structures (such as “flip partnerships”).

The refundability of the Canadian credits potentially improves the economics of, and the rate of investment in, the targeted projects in the following ways:

- For large projects with large capital expenditure requirements and long construction time frames, the two-year rolling start rule and/or the long-term project election allow the project owner to treat the project as available for use on a rolling basis so as to start claiming the clean energy ITC during the construction phase. In these circumstances, a cash refund is available since the project is not generating profits. The cash refund could be an additional source of capital funding or could be used to repay existing debt.
- For projects with shorter construction time frames, the ITC may not be claimed until the project is operational. Generally, even these projects are not taxable for several years after coming into operation because of the availability of accelerated depreciation and deductions for financing costs. Therefore, the expectation is that the credit claims would similarly generate a cash refund that could be used to repay construction debt and/or fund interim distributions to owners.

In both circumstances, the credits have the ability to help reduce the cost of financing and improve project economics.

Arguably, from a net present-value perspective, transferability of the clean energy ITCs could make them more effective in de-risking a project and giving project proponents more flexibility. For example, a project proponent could choose how to use the credits to finance the construction of the project depending on the proponent's financial and tax position; for example, it could retain the credit for its own use or monetize the credit as an alternative capital source. The actual incremental value of being able to transfer the credits would vary depending on the project and the particular credit, but it would be difficult to deny that there is benefit in having the flexibility to transfer the credit.

It appears quite clear in the ITC legislation, and the supporting rules in the Act, that the Canadian government has made a deliberate policy decision to restrict the availability of the clean energy ITCs to the proponents of eligible projects that hold an equity interest in the project, and only if those proponents intend to use the equipment for the long term. This policy can readily be gleaned from the adoption of a recapture rule that applies for 10 to 20 years, depending on the type of project; an express statement in the legislation that the intention of the clean energy ITCs is to encourage capital investments; and, in the case of partnerships, the express adoption of a "reasonable allocation" restriction.

Bonus Credits

For some of the analogous US tax credits, the US government has introduced several programs that provide for "bonus credits" that effectively increase the base ITC and/or PTC rates. These programs include the following:

- *The low-income communities bonus credit.* This bonus credit increases the amount of the ITCs for clean energy investments in low-income communities, on Indigenous lands, as part of affordable housing developments, or benefiting low-income households;
- *The energy community bonus credit.* This bonus credit increases ITCs and PTCs for projects that are located in energy communities (such as brownfield sites[9] or areas related to mining operations); certain metropolitan statistical areas and non-metropolitan statistical areas based on unemployment rates; and census tracts where a coal mine closed after 1999 or where a coal-fired electric generating unit was retired after 2009 (and directly adjoining census tracts).
- *The domestic content bonus credit.* This bonus credit increases ITCs and PTCs where the taxpayer certifies that its qualified facility, energy project, or energy storage technology was built with certain percentages of steel, iron, or manufactured products that were mined, produced, or manufactured in the United States.

The Canadian government has not introduced any bonus credit programs to supplement the clean energy ITCs. However, it did initiate a public consultation seeking input on whether Canada should adopt domestic content requirements, similar to those enacted under the IRA (and in other countries), to restrict access to the ITCs.[10] The consultation period ended on November 17, 2023, and the government has not provided an update on whether it might proceed with the adoption of domestic content rules, or what they would look like.

Reduction of Technological Restrictions

A further innovation in the US credit system that has not yet been adopted in Canada is credits that are designed to allow for industrial innovation in the method of power production. The US Environmental Protection Agency has announced that "[s]tarting January 1, 2025, the Inflation Reduction Act [will] replace the traditional PTC with the Clean Energy Production Tax Credit (§ 13701) and the traditional ITC with the Clean Electricity Investment Tax Credit (§ 13702)."[11] These tax credits are functionally similar to the pre-2025 ITC/PTC in the United States but are not technology-specific. The new US credits are designed not to be limited to methods

9 A brownfield site is defined as real property, the expansion, redevelopment, or reuse of which may be complicated by the presence or potential presence of a hazardous substance, pollutant, or contaminant, and includes certain mine-scarred land.

10 Canada, Department of Finance, "Consultation on Defending Canadian Businesses Against Foreign Tax Credit Restrictions" (www.canada.ca/en/department-finance/programs/consultations/2023/consultation-on-defending-canadian-businesses-against-unfair-foreign-tax-credit-restrictions.html).

11 United States, Environmental Protection Agency, "Summary of Inflation Reduction Act Provisions Related to Renewable Energy" (www.epa.gov/green-power-markets/summary-inflation-reduction-act-provisions-related-renewable-energy).

of power generation. Instead, the new credits will apply to all generation facilities (and energy storage systems under the ITC provisions) that have an anticipated greenhouse gas (GHG) emission rate of zero. The credit amount is generally calculated in the same manner as for the existing pre-2025 ITC/PTC but will be phased out as the United States meets its GHG emission reduction targets.

DETAILS OF THE CLEAN ENERGY ITCs

The remainder of this article provides a more detailed description of each of the clean energy ITCs, including the requirements to be met and the applicable rates. These details are summarized in tabular form in the appendix to this article.

Carbon Capture, Utilization, and Storage ITC

The CCUS ITC provisions are contained in section 127.44. The CCUS ITC applies to qualifying expenditures incurred beginning January 1, 2022 and ending before January 1, 2041.

Eligible Claimants

The CCUS ITC can be claimed by a "qualifying taxpayer," which is defined to be a taxable Canadian corporation that owns the eligible CCUS property, either directly or through a partnership.

Project Eligibility and ITC Rates

Eligibility for, and the quantum of, the CCUS ITC for a particular project are determined on the basis of three main concepts:

1. "CCUS project,"
2. "qualified CCUS expenditure," and
3. "eligible use."

Eligibility is assessed at the macro level against the CCUS project as a whole. The property and expenditure classification and the portion of captured carbon that is put to an eligible use determine the ITC rate and amount.

CCUS Project

"CCUS project" is defined to mean a project that performs one of the following activities:

- captures carbon dioxide (CO_2), either directly from the air or prior to release into the air;
- transports CO_2; or
- stores or uses CO_2.

For a CCUS project to be an eligible CCUS project (that is, to qualify for the CCUS ITC), at least 10 percent of the carbon captured from the project must be put to an eligible use based on initial project plans.

A pre-project verification review by Natural Resources Canada is mandatory for projects that expect to have at least $100 million of eligible expenses (and optional for smaller projects). Under this process, a project plan is submitted to Natural Resources Canada, which conducts a preliminary verification of (1) the eligibility of expenses, (2) the satisfaction of the minimum 10 percent eligible use threshold, and (3) the projected eligible use versus the ineligible use of the project, which is the basis for computing the amount of the taxpayer's CCUS ITC claims. If there are significant changes to the project parameters, a new project plan can be submitted to Natural Resources Canada, or a revised plan may be requested.

Qualified CCUS Expenditure

The legislation provides for four categories of capital expenditures (collectively referred to as "qualified CCUS expenditures") that are eligible for the CCUS ITC:

1. "qualified carbon capture expenditure,"
2. "qualified carbon transportation expenditure,"
3. "qualified carbon storage expenditure," and
4. "qualified carbon use expenditure."

This categorization reflects the components of a carbon capture system and the function that they perform in the process. The types of equipment and property that qualify are in turn determined by reference to two new CCA classes, classes 57 and 58, that were introduced in conjunction with the CCUS ITC.

Different ITC rates apply to each category, as set out below:

	Rate for costs incurred after 2021 through 2030	Rate for costs incurred after 2030 through 2040
	percent	
Eligible CO_2 capture equipment used in a direct air capture project	60	30
All other eligible CO_2 capture equipment	50	25
Eligible CO_2 transportation, storage, and use equipment	37.5	18.75

The credit rate is reduced by 10 percentage points if the labour requirements are not satisfied.

Certain refurbishment costs incurred during the first 20 years of the operation of an eligible CCUS project could also qualify for the CCUS ITC. These costs are capped at 10 percent of the project's pre-operation costs that qualified for the ITC. The rates for the CCUS refurbishment ITC are the same as the rates for the CCUS ITC.

Eligible Use

The concept of eligible use is relevant to determining both the eligibility of the project as a whole for the CCUS ITC and the applicable credit amount in respect of certain categories of qualified CCUS expenditures. As noted above, the CCUS ITC rules require that at least 10 percent of the CO_2 expected to be captured must be for an eligible use. Also, with respect to the cost of CO_2 capture and transportation equipment, the portion of expenditures for such equipment that qualifies for the CCUS ITC is based on the percentage of captured CO_2 from the project that is used for an eligible use.

"Eligible use" is defined to include

- storage of the captured CO_2 in concrete, where at least 60 percent of the CO_2 is mineralized and locked into the concrete; and
- sequestration of the captured CO_2 in a dedicated geological site located in a designated jurisdiction.

Currently, only British Columbia, Alberta, and Saskatchewan are designated jurisdictions.

CO_2 that is emitted by or used for enhanced oil recovery are ineligible uses.

It is anticipated that claimants will compute and claim the CCUS ITC on the basis of the eligible use of the CCUS project determined by Natural Resources Canada through the pre-project verification process. Once operational, projects are to be assessed every five years for up to 20 years, to confirm the percentage of captured CO_2 that is actually put to an eligible use. The CCUS ITC can be clawed back if the actual eligible use of the captured CO_2 is less than the projected eligible use (based on initial project plans) by 5 percent or more.

Knowledge-Sharing and Reporting Requirements

Claimants of the CCUS ITC are subject to two further disclosure and reporting obligations:

1. *Knowledge sharing*. For CCUS projects that are expected to have at least \$250 million of eligible expenditures, claimants are subject to
   a. a one-time report regarding construction and completion, and
   b. annual reports regarding the operation of the project for each of the first five years post-completion. These reports are to be submitted to the government and published online. Claimants are subject to a \$2 million penalty for failure to comply.
2. *Climate risk disclosure*. For CCUS projects with expenditures of \$20 million or more during construction, claimants must report how they are managing

climate-related risks and contributing to Canada's 2050 net zero goal and Paris Agreement commitments. This is an annual disclosure obligation that applies, generally, for the first 20 years of the project's operation. Claimants are subject to a penalty of the lesser of $1 million and 4 percent of CCUS ITCs claimed if they fail to comply.

Clean Hydrogen ITC

The clean hydrogen ITC provisions are contained in section 127.48. The clean hydrogen ITC applies to qualifying expenditures incurred between March 28, 2023 and December 31, 2034.

Eligible Claimants

The clean hydrogen ITC can be claimed by a "qualifying taxpayer," which is defined to be a taxable Canadian corporation that owns the eligible property, either directly or through a partnership.

Project Eligibility and ITC Rates

The availability of the clean hydrogen ITC to a project and the quantum of the credit are determined by the process employed to produce the hydrogen and the carbon intensity (CI) of the project. Specifically, for the project to qualify for the credit, the hydrogen must be produced either through electrolysis (referred to as "green hydrogen") or from natural gas reforming with CO_2 emissions abated through carbon capture (referred to as "blue hydrogen"). The applicable credit rate depends on the CI of the project—that is, the number of kilograms (kg) of carbon dioxide equivalent (CO_2e) produced per kg of hydrogen produced—as shown in the following table.

Kg of CO_2e per kg of hydrogen	Rate for costs incurred from March 28, 2023 through 2033	Rate for costs incurred in 2034
	percent	
< 0.75 kg	40	20
0.75 kg to < 2 kg	25	12.5
2 kg to < 4 kg	15	7.5

As the table indicates, the initial rates applicable until the end of 2033 are halved in 2034. The rate is reduced to nil in 2035. The credit rate is reduced by 10 percentage points if the labour requirements are not satisfied.

Computation and Verification of CI and Clawback of Credit To Reflect Actual CI

The expected CI of a project is based on its full life cycle, including upstream input emissions, with special rules applying to power purchase agreements.

The clean hydrogen ITC will be available only if the minister of natural resources confirms that the project satisfies the production pathways requirement and the expected CI (plus additional requirements for projects producing clean ammonia). This confirmation is facilitated through a pre-project validation and verification process initiated by filing a project plan with the minister. The project plan must include a front-end engineering design study and the expected CI of the hydrogen, with supporting reports from a third-party "qualified validation firm."

It is anticipated that claimants will claim the clean hydrogen ITC on the basis of the CI reflected in the project plan submitted to and verified by the minister of natural resources, through the pre-project review process. After the project comes into operation, claimants are required to report on an annual basis, during the first five operating years of the project, the actual CI of the hydrogen produced by the project. The report must also be supported by a report from a third-party qualified verification firm, which cannot be the same firm as the qualified validation firm used for the preparation of the project plan. If the actual CI of the project is less than the projected CI used to compute the ITC claim, there is a potential clawback of the clean hydrogen ITC. Where the actual CI is lower than the expected CI, there is no mechanism to increase the ITC claim.

Eligible Expenditures

Capital expenditures on the following equipment are eligible for the clean hydrogen ITC:

- Equipment for producing hydrogen through electrolysis of water.
- Equipment for producing hydrogen through natural gas reforming.
- Equipment for producing oxygen used for hydrogen production.
- Equipment for producing heat or power from natural gas or hydrogen.
- Certain dual-use power or heat production equipment where more than 50 percent of the energy balance is expected to be used primarily to support hydrogen production. If this 50 percent threshold is not met, the clean hydrogen ITC will be reduced on the basis of the expected energy balance.
- Certain equipment to convert clean hydrogen to clean ammonia. The credit rate is only 15 percent for this category of equipment.

Clean Technology ITC

The clean technology ITC provisions are contained in section 127.45.

The clean technology ITC is a 30 percent refundable credit available for eligible equipment that is acquired and becomes available for use between March 28, 2023 and December 31, 2033. The credit rate is reduced to 15 percent for equipment that is acquired and becomes available for use in 2034, and is fully phased out after 2035. The credit rate is reduced by 10 percentage points if the labour requirements are not satisfied.

Eligible Claimants

The clean technology ITC can be claimed by a "qualifying taxpayer," which is defined as a taxable Canadian corporation or a mutual fund trust that is a real estate investment trust that owns the eligible property, either directly or through a partnership.

Eligible Equipment

The clean technology ITC is available for "clean technology property," which is defined by reference to CCA classes 43.1 and 43.2, and includes

- specified zero-emission electricity generation technologies (solar photovoltaic, small modular nuclear reactors, geothermal, and concentrated solar, wind, and water);
- non-fossil-fuel-based stationary electricity storage systems (including batteries, flywheels, compressed air energy storage, pumped hydroelectric energy storage, gravity energy storage, and thermal energy storage);
- certain waste biomass heat and electricity generation systems (defined as "wood waste, plant residue, municipal waste, sludge from an eligible sewage treatment facility, spent pulping liquor, food and animal waste, manure, pulp and paper by-product, and separated organics");
- air-source and ground-source heat pumps; and
- industrial (non-road) zero-emission vehicles—either fully electric or powered by hydrogen (including related charging and refuelling equipment).

Qualifying equipment must be new (that is, not used for any purpose prior to being bought) and located and intended for use solely in Canada.

Clean Electricity ITC

The clean electricity ITC was announced in the 2023 federal budget, with further details of its design and scope being released in the 2024 federal budget. To date, draft legislation for this credit has not been released, and the government has indicated that it will conduct consultations before releasing draft legislation.

According to the information available to date, the clean electricity ITC will be a 15 percent refundable credit for expenditures on eligible equipment. The labour requirements described above will be applicable to this credit, and the ITC rate will be reduced by 10 percentage points if those requirements are not satisfied.

The clean electricity ITC will be available for property that is acquired and becomes available for use between April 16, 2024 and December 31, 2034, for projects that began construction on or after March 28, 2023. The government has not announced a phaseout period for this credit.

The clean electricity ITC is intended to target renewable and low-carbon energy generation projects; accordingly, there will likely be significant overlap with the scope of the clean technology ITC. However, the clean electricity ITC will be available to a broader group of persons and projects, and therefore will include additional qualifying conditions.

Eligible Claimants

The clean electricity ITC is expected to be available to taxable Canadian corporations (as is the case with the clean technology ITC), as well as the following persons:

- provincial and territorial Crown corporations, provided that they meet certain other requirements;
- corporations owned by municipalities;
- corporations owned by Indigenous communities; and
- pension investment corporations.

Eligible Equipment

Very generally, equipment and property that are eligible for the clean technology ITC will also be eligible for the clean electricity ITC. In addition, the following types of equipment and property are expected to be eligible for the clean electricity ITC:

1. large-scale hydroelectricity generation systems;
2. large-scale nuclear electricity generation systems;
3. certain equipment for interprovincial/territorial electricity transmission; and
4. natural gas systems that use fuel to generate electricity, or electricity and heat, provided that
   a. all or substantially all of the fuel is natural gas,
   b. CO_2 emissions are abated through the use of a carbon capture system; and
   c. the emission intensity of the project does not exceed 65 tons of CO_2 per gigawatt of energy produced.[12]

The government has also indicated that the clean electricity ITC will be available for the cost of refurbishing eligible equipment, which is a key difference between this clean energy credit and the clean technology ITC.

Additional Requirements for Provincial and Territorial Crown Corporations

The government has indicated that for corporations owned by provinces and territories to qualify for the clean electricity ITC, the eligible property must be located in a "designated jurisdiction." To be a "designated jurisdiction," the provincial or territorial government of that jurisdiction must meet the following requirements to the satisfaction of the federal finance minister:

12 Natural gas systems are subject to special recapture rules if they exceed the emissions intensity limit.

- be publicly committed to work toward a net zero electricity grid by 2035;
- pass on the value of the clean electricity ITC to electricity ratepayers; and
- direct their corporations claiming the clean electricity ITC to publish a report annually that documents how the credit has improved the energy bills of ratepayers.

A separate consultation will be held with provinces and territories in respect of these requirements.

Overlap Between the Clean Technology ITC and the Clean Electricity ITC

The clean technology ITC and the clean electricity ITC both apply to the cost of equipment used to produce clean power. In cases where a particular project or equipment qualifies for both of these ITCs, the guidance from the Canadian government thus far suggests that a claimant will be able to choose between the two credits. However, this will need to be confirmed once draft legislation is available for the clean electricity ITC. Clarification is also needed as to whether each partner holding a project through a partnership has the discretion to choose which credit to claim, independent of the other partners.

Clean Technology Manufacturing ITC

The clean technology manufacturing ITC provisions are contained in section 127.49.

The clean technology manufacturing ITC is a 30 percent refundable credit. The credit is available in respect of the costs of certain clean technology manufacturing/processing equipment and critical mineral extraction/processing capital costs.

The credit is available at the full 30 percent rate for property that is acquired and becomes available for use from 2024 through 2031, and at the reduced rates of 20 percent for 2032, 10 percent for 2033, and 5 percent for 2034. The credit will be fully phased out by 2035. As noted above, this credit is not subject to the labour requirements.

Eligible Claimants

The clean technology manufacturing ITC can be claimed by a "qualifying taxpayer," which is defined to be a taxable Canadian corporation that owns the eligible property, either directly or through a partnership.

Eligible Expenditures

The clean technology manufacturing ITC is available for the cost of machinery and equipment (including some industrial vehicles) used in specified activities. These activities include

- the manufacture and processing of renewable energy equipment, nuclear energy equipment, zero-emission vehicles, batteries, and upstream components that are purpose-built for other clean technology manufacturing and processing activities; and

- extraction and certain processing activities for six specified minerals: lithium, cobalt, nickel, graphite, copper, and rare earth elements (including certain polymetallic projects).[13]

Electric Vehicle ITC

An additional 10 percent ITC was announced in the 2024 federal budget to support the establishment of an electric vehicle supply chain in Canada.[14] This credit is in addition to, and appears to supplement, the clean technology manufacturing ITC.

Draft legislation was not released with the announcement of this credit. The government indicated that further details of this credit will be released with its fall economic update (usually released in November of each year) and that the credit will incorporate elements of the clean technology manufacturing ITC where applicable. This suggests, although it was not expressly noted in the budget release, that the electric vehicle ITC will be refundable and not subject to the labour requirements.

The focus of the credit is narrow; it is available only for the cost of buildings used for three specified electric vehicle supply chain segments:

1. electric vehicle assembly,
2. electric vehicle battery production, and
3. cathode active material production.

To qualify, a claimant must be eligible for and claim the clean technology manufacturing ITC for expenditures in all three of the specified supply chain segments, or have claimed the clean technology manufacturing ITC for expenditures in two of the segments, and must hold a qualifying minority interest in an unrelated corporation that claims the clean technology manufacturing ITC for expenditures in the third segment. The government has indicated that in the latter scenario, the unrelated corporation also will be able to claim the electric vehicle ITC.

Currently, the electric vehicle ITC is expected to be available for buildings that are acquired and available for use from 2024 to 2032. The 10 percent rate will be reduced to 5 percent for 2033 and 2034.

13 The 2024 federal budget, supra note 4, clarified that this credit would be available to polymetallic projects—that is, projects that produce multiple specified metals. However, legislation to enact this change has not yet been introduced.

14 2024 budget, supra note 4.

APPENDIX CLEAN ENERGY INVESTMENT TAX CREDITS (ITCs) AT A GLANCE

TABLE A1 Carbon and Hydrogen: Carbon Capture, Utilization, and Storage (CCUS) ITC and Clean Hydrogen ITC

	CCUS ITC	Clean hydrogen ITC
Maximum ITC rate[a]	2022 to 2030: 37.5% to 60% 2031 to 2040: 18.75% to 30%	15% to 40%
Eligible claimants	Taxable Canadian corporations only	Taxable Canadian corporations only
Labour requirements	Yes	Yes
Eligibility period	2022 to 2040	March 28, 2023 to December 31, 2034
Earliest ITC claim	May be claimed as incurred	May be claimed only when assets are "available for use"
Eligible expenditures	■ Equipment used solely to capture, transport, store, or use carbon dioxide ■ Dual-use power/heating equipment (ITC prorated on the basis of use in CCUS process)	Equipment used to ■ produce green or blue hydrogen or ■ convert clean hydrogen to clean ammonia (reduced rate applies)
Refurbishment costs	Eligible but subject to cap	Not eligible
Legislative status	Enacted	Enacted

ITC = investment tax credit.

a Rate generally reduced during phaseout period for the credit.

TABLE A2 Clean Power Production: Clean Technology ITC and Clean Electricity ITC

	Clean technology ITC	Clean electricity ITC
Maximum ITC rate[a]	30%	15%
Eligible claimants	Taxable Canadian corporations only	Taxable Canadian corporations and certain tax-exempt entities
Labour requirements	Yes	Yes
Eligibility period	March 28, 2023 to December 31, 2034	April 16, 2024 to December 31, 2034 if project construction begins on or after March 28, 2023
Earliest ITC claim	When assets are "available for use"	When assets are "available for use"
Eligible expenditures	■ Non-emitting electricity generation projects (excluding large hydro and nuclear) ■ Stationary electricity storage not powered by fossil fuels ■ Low-carbon heat equipment ■ Industrial zero-emission vehicles and related charging or refuelling ■ Geothermal systems (excluding co-generation systems)	■ Non-emitting electricity generation projects (including large hydro and nuclear) ■ Stationary electricity storage not powered by fossil fuels ■ Certain abated natural gas-fired electricity generation ■ Interprovincial electricity transmission equipment
Refurbishment costs	Not eligible	Eligible (no details yet)
Legislative status	Enacted	Draft legislation expected in 2024

ITC = investment tax credit.

a Rate generally reduced during phaseout period for the credit.

TABLE A3 Clean Equipment Manufacturing: Clean Technology Manufacturing ITC and Electric Vehicle ITC

	Clean technology manufacturing ITC	Electric vehicle ITC
Maximum ITC rate[a]	30%	10%
Eligible claimants	Taxable Canadian corporations only	Taxable Canadian corporations only
Labour requirements	No	Assumed no
Eligibility period	2024 to 2034	2024 to 2034
Earliest ITC claim	When assets are "available for use"	Unknown
Eligible expenditures	Equipment for use in ■ clean technology manufacturing and processing, and ■ processing of critical minerals	Cost of buildings used in ■ EV assembly, ■ EV battery production, and ■ cathode active material production. Claimant must claim clean technology manufacturing ITC in all three segments (with alternative route if only claiming ITC in two segments)
Refurbishment costs	Not eligible	Uncertain
Legislative status	Enacted	Uncertain

EV = electric vehicle; ITC = investment tax credit.

a Rate generally reduced during phaseout period for the credit.

canadian tax journal / revue fiscale canadienne (2024) 72:3, 749-65
https://doi.org/10.32721/ctj.2024.72.3.ctr

Current Tax Reading

Co-Editors: Kim Brooks, Jinyan Li, Alan Macnaughton, and Michael Veall*

François Vaillancourt and Nathaniel Li, *Personal Income Tax Compliance for Canadians: How and at What Cost?* (Vancouver: Fraser Institute, 2024) (www.fraserinstitute.org/sites/default/files/personal-income-tax-compliance-for-canadians.pdf)

This is a report of a survey of 1,523 Canadian residents, aged 18 or older, who were drawn from a panel. The survey, conducted by a polling firm in May 2023, asked about the preparation of 2022 personal income tax returns. The questionnaire itself is provided. Other than that, we are given little information about the survey's methodology. No information is included, for example, about any bias created by the low response rate and its consequence—namely, that those surveyed are not representative of Canadian taxpayers. Respondents were assigned survey weights to match the Canadian population on key demographic variables and types of income received.[1]

The aggregate statistics are of most interest: on average, individual Canadian taxfilers spent 1.5 hours on accumulating required tax data and filing tax returns, and their out-of-pocket expenses were $88. On the basis of a question regarding respondents' pre-tax hourly wage—a question designed to put a value on the time they spent preparing their returns (averaging $42 for the 1.5 hours)—the survey found that a taxfiler's total compliance cost averaged $130.[2] This amounted to 1.2 percent (on average) of total personal income tax revenue.[3] The report involves no comparison with research results from other countries, although this information is available in previously published research of the report's senior author.[4]

* Kim Brooks is of the Schulich School of Law, Dalhousie University, Halifax (e-mail: kim.brooks@dal.ca); Jinyan Li is of Osgoode Hall Law School, York University, Toronto (e-mail: jinyanli@osgoode.yorku.ca); Alan Macnaughton is of the School of Accounting and Finance, University of Waterloo (e-mail: amacnaughton@uwaterloo.ca); and Michael Veall is of the Department of Economics, McMaster University, Hamilton, Ontario, and editor of *Canadian Public Policy* (e-mail: veall@mcmaster.ca).

1 At 18-19, table A-1.

2 At 1.

3 At 12.

4 For intertemporal comparisons, see Feriel Grine and François Vaillancourt, *Modes de préparation et coûts de produire une déclaration de revenus des particuliers au Canada: résultats pour 2018 et comparaisons intertemporelles*, Cahier de recherche 2023/18 (Québec: Université de Sherbrooke, Chaire de recherche en fiscalité et en finances publiques, 2013).

One of the survey questions was how respondents would react "if the federal government sent you a prefilled form for both federal and provincial taxes."[5] The option of a prefilled form has been mentioned in recent budgets and is under consideration by the Canada Revenue Agency (CRA). The survey responses were converted into quantitative results through assumptions regarding how each of the responses affected compliance costs. These assumptions ranged from a 100 percent reduction in compliance costs for a response of "accept it [that is, the prefilled form] as such with no verification on your part" to a 0 percent reduction for a response of "continue preparing your own income tax return."[6] The results showed that average compliance costs would go down by one-third, from $130 to $87, if pre-filled returns were offered.[7] Although the report does not comment on the age breakdown, the proportion of respondents who would not use the prefilled return rises monotonically with age, from 5 percent of respondents aged 18-24 to 36 percent for respondents aged 65 and over.[8] Thus, younger respondents would receive the largest reduction in compliance costs if prefilled returns were used.

The survey showed that half of the filers (50 percent) prepared their own tax returns, while more than one-third (37 percent) used a paid tax preparer; the remainder had a friend, family member, or volunteer prepare the return.[9] Of the filers who used software to prepare their own return, about 60 percent used the "auto fill my return" option to download tax data from the CRA.[10]

One of the survey questions was how much of the respondents' time was spent on "general issues, payment and federal form," as opposed to "provincial form or annex."[11] Canadian filers overall reported a 60/40 split, while Quebecers reported a 50/50 split.[12] This seems to imply that filers outside Quebec spent at least 30 percent of their time specifically on provincial forms. Although the report does not comment on this figure, it seems high. These provinces have agreed, under the tax collection agreements, that provincial differences are limited to the rate schedule and tax credits; the differences do not involve the definition of "taxable income." Also, many provincial credits are simply the application of provincial credit rates to the federal definition of "qualifying expenditures."[13]

A key component of the report is various cross-tabulations. For example, time spent in the preparation and filing of returns is correlated with various socio-demographic

5 At 38.

6 At 14, table 4.

7 At 14, table 4.

8 At 13, figure 4.

9 At 4.

10 At 7.

11 At 36.

12 At 10.

13 One case of provincial complexity is Ontario's childcare access and relief from expenses (CARE) tax credit.

characteristics and types of income.[14] Other tables show similar results for out-of-pocket expenses.[15] However, the report notes that these bivariate results can be misleading: "[W]hen we observe the relationship between income levels and compliance costs, we do not control for age or education—two determinants of income."[16]

To deal with this problem, the report also carries out a multivariate analysis of total compliance costs (which combine taxpayers' hours with out-of-pocket expenses). In the authors' preferred statistical model, the only statistically significant relationships were with income and self-employment: the effect of moving from income under $60,000 to income over $100,000 was to increase compliance costs by $118, and the effect of moving from being an employee to being self-employed was to increase compliance costs by $104.[17]

The statistical model above included only socio-demographic variables. Using a different statistical model that also considered the method of preparing the tax return, the survey found that using a paid tax preparer, as opposed to using purchased software to prepare the tax return oneself, increased total compliance costs by $26.[18] Given that total compliance costs included the value of the taxpayer's time, using a paid preparer did not save the taxpayer enough time to justify the increased costs.

AM

Fei Men, Andrée-Anne St-Germain, Kent Ross, Ronaz Remtulla, and Valerie Tarasuk, "Effect of Canada Child Benefit on Food Insecurity: A Propensity Score-Matched Analysis" (2023) 64:6 *American Journal of Preventive Medicine* 844-52

Previous studies have shown that the Canada child benefit (CCB) is effective at raising income, food expenditure, and living standards. This study shows that the CCB is also effective at reducing food insecurity. The authors had very good data—namely, Statistics Canada's Canadian Income Survey, which is linked to tax records. The survey was administered for three years, from 2019 to 2021.

To measure food insecurity, 18 questions were asked regarding income-related access to food in the preceding 12 months. From the answers to these questions, a binary (zero or one) measure of food insecurity was developed.

A possible approach would have been to weigh the effect of the CCB on the food-security measure by comparing CCB recipients with non-recipients. However, it was considered that this approach would bias the results because of systematic differences in household characteristics between the two groups (for example, some households are childless families while others are families with children). Therefore, a different approach was adopted. Families with at least one child under 6 years old were the

14 At 25-26, table A-5.

15 At 27-28, table A-6.

16 At 11.

17 At 11 and 30-31.

18 At 31.

"treatment group," (or "treated households"). Families with children who were all 6 to 17 years old were the "untreated group" (also referred to as "the control group"). Because the CCB provides higher benefits for children under 6, a typical treated household had $724 higher CCB per child per year than did an untreated household. Therefore, the treated households were expected to be less food-insecure.

The statistical results confirmed this hypothesis. In short, treated households, relative to untreated households, were found to have a 12 percent lower probability of being food-insecure (24.3 percent of the untreated households were food-insecure, while 21.42 percent of the treated households were food-insecure).

AM

Kelly Foley, David A. Green, and W. Craig Riddell, "Canadian Inequality Over the Last 40 Years: Common and Contrary Variations on Universal Themes" (2024) 45:2 *Fiscal Studies* 119-30

James Banks, Richard Blundell, Antoine Bozio, Jonathan Cribb, David Green, and James P. Ziliak, "Changing Labour Market and Income Inequalities in Europe and North America: A Parallel Project to the IRS Deaton Review of Inequalities in the 21st Century" (2024) 45:2 *Fiscal Studies* 111-17 (https://doi.org/10.1111/1475-5890.12379)

Jake Fuss and Grady Munro, *Canada's Rising Personal Tax Rates and Falling Tax Competitiveness* (Vancouver: Fraser Institute, 2024)

Tegan Hill and Nathaniel Li, *Undoing Alberta's Personal Income Tax Hikes* (Vancouver: Fraser Institute, 2024)

Jake Fuss and Nathaniel Li, *Measuring Progressivity in Canada's Tax System* (Vancouver: Fraser Institute, 2024)

Economic inequality, and the contribution of the tax and transfer system to that inequality, continues to be of wide interest. These five studies illuminate different aspects of the topic.

Foley, Green, and Riddell take a long-term perspective on Canadian inequality, examining trends from 1995 to 2019. Both the inequality of market incomes and the inequality of disposable incomes are studied and explained. The difference between the two, of course, is the effect of the tax and transfer system.

There are three main findings. First, there were strong increases in the inequality of market incomes in the 1980s and early 1990s—not just in Canada but also in the United Kingdom and the United States. In Canada, however, these increases were almost completely offset by changes in tax and transfer policies. Second, inequality increased in the subsequent decade, largely because of cuts in both taxes and transfers. Third, from about 2000 to 2019, both the inequality of market incomes and the inequality of disposable incomes have been flat. This last finding is perhaps particularly surprising, given that inequality of both types rose in many other countries. Unfortunately, the lack of data beyond 2019 prevents an examination of more recent trends.

Banks et al., reporting on a multi-country project (of which the article by Foley, Green, and Riddell is one component), situate these Canadian findings in the context of three other English-speaking countries (the United States, the United Kingdom, and Ireland) and four Scandinavian countries. Perhaps the most interesting finding is that the Canadian experience described above is sharply different from the US experience; in the United States, the inequality of disposable income has been steadily rising for the past five decades. This has largely been driven by increases in the inequality of market incomes (especially for the highest-income group). The main factors in this increased inequality of market incomes were the decline of work and marriage in the non-college-educated group and the tendency of higher-income individuals to marry other higher-income individuals ("associative mating"). This increasing inequality of pre-tax incomes translates into increasing inequality of disposable incomes because the tax and transfer system, although it is redistributive, is not sufficiently so to reverse these market forces.

While the two *Fiscal Studies* articles discussed above devote much space to examining the reasons for the inequality of market incomes, the three Fraser Institute reports—by, respectively, Fuss and Munro, Hill and Li, and Fuss and Li—pay no attention to the inequality of before-tax incomes; they focus exclusively on the tax and transfer system. Generally speaking, the issue examined is the burden of personal income taxes on higher-income individuals, which is a key factor in reducing inequality in disposable incomes.

Fuss and Munro measure the extent to which marginal tax rates on higher-income individuals have been rising in the recent years, and they provide detailed information, organized according to province, for the 2009-2023 period. The federal government increased the top marginal rate from 29 percent to 33 percent in 2016, but it was far from alone: beginning with Nova Scotia in 2010, 7 out of 10 provinces also increased top marginal rates in this period. Of these increases, the largest was in Newfoundland and Labrador, which raised its top marginal rate over 10 percentage points.[19] In the 2009-2023 period, three provinces did not increase their top rates: Manitoba and PEI kept their rates steady, while Saskatchewan reduced all marginal tax rate brackets.[20]

The highest marginal tax rate in 2023 was Newfoundland and Labrador (54.8 percent), closely followed by Nova Scotia (54 percent) and Ontario (53.53 percent). In 2009, the top marginal tax rate in all provinces was below 50 percent; the only provinces in 2023 with top rates so low were Alberta (48 percent) and Saskatchewan (47.55 percent).[21]

Fuss and Munro also examine changes in marginal tax rates at other income levels, providing a detailed historical account of the year-by-year changes in each province. Rate thresholds are also examined. Comparisons are made with the tax

19 At 3.

20 At 9.

21 At 13.

rates in all US states. Comparisons are also made with all OECD countries on the basis of OECD data, according to which Canada had the fifth-highest top combined personal marginal tax rate in 2022.[22]

Hill and Li likewise examine the issue of marginal tax rates, but they do so from a more forward-looking perspective. They note that Alberta had a single, 10 percent personal income tax rate as recently as 2014, before being replaced by a conventional progressive structure. The authors propose an 8 percent single-rate provincial tax for Alberta, with the main purpose, it appears, of reducing the top marginal federal-provincial rate so as to make the province more competitive relative to energy-producing US jurisdictions. The marginal tax rates of seven such jurisdictions, including Colorado and Texas, are singled out for comparison with Alberta's. The 8 percent rate is said to produce tax savings for Albertans in all income groups—presumably because the lowest rate bracket in 2024 (that is, 10 percent) is higher than 8 percent.[23] However, the report also briefly mentions the possibility of eliminating some unspecified (all?) credits, deductions, and exemptions, with a view to achieving the other component of a "flat tax."[24] Presumably, not everyone would get a tax cut if these additional reforms were also implemented.

Fuss and Li undertake a more speculative project—namely, examining the progressivity of the personal income tax in Canada for 2024. They project past taxpayer incomes for a sample of individuals grouped into families, and then apply 2024 tax parameters.[25] The authors' main table compares personal income tax paid with total income earned for five quintiles (20 percent slices) of family incomes. At one extreme, the bottom 20 percent of the income distribution have a 5 percent share of total income but a 0.8 percent share of all personal income taxes paid. At the other extreme, the top 20 percent of the income distribution have a 46.4 percent share of total income and a 62.7 percent share of all personal income taxes paid. Together, the middle three quintiles (60 percent) of the income distribution have the remaining 36.5 percent share of all personal income taxes paid.[26]

AM

Reuven S. Avi-Yonah, ed., *Research Handbook on Corporate Taxation*
(Cheltenham, UK and Northampton, US: Edward Elgar, 2023)

This book is a collection of papers written by some of the world's leading tax law scholars and practitioners, from the United States and other countries. These papers

22 At 27.

23 At 7, table 3.

24 At 8.

25 The study cites the Fraser Institute's Canadian Tax Simulator, which incorporates data from Statistics Canada's SPSD/M program. However, the study reports far fewer details about the assumptions used than would typically appear in academic research, and it would not be possible to replicate the work without further information.

26 At 3.

explore, and offer insights into, theoretical and policy issues regarding corporate taxation, especially the taxation of multinational enterprises (MNEs). From various perspectives (policy, system design, and professional practice), the papers cover the corporate tax system in the United States, the European Union, and 11 countries. The book is designed, accordingly, to be useful to tax practitioners, policy makers, and academics.

In the United States, Canada, and most of the jurisdictions examined in this book, corporations are "everywhere" and "nowhere." Corporations are everywhere because of their role in the economy—over 80 percent of economic activity in the United States is effectuated through the corporate form.[27] At the same time, corporations are nowhere because they are legal fictions, even though corporate management is real and the corporate power over employees, shareholders, and society at large is real. In a fiscal sense, corporations are real because corporate income tax accounts for about 10 percent of total tax revenues in Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD) countries.

The book has five parts and 26 chapters, organized as follows: foundations (part I, chapters 1-4); [taxation of US] corporate operations (part II, chapters 5-8); comparative corporate taxation (part III, chapters 9-20); corporate tax planning (part IV, chapters 21-24); and conclusion (part V, chapters 25-26).

Part I discusses basic and mostly academic questions. Chapter 1 (by Yariv Brauner) discusses the rationale for the corporate tax, examining the various arguments for it: (1) technical arguments (for example, corporations are separate legal persons and should pay the price, in the form of taxation, for the benefits of that status); (2) policy arguments (for example, the ability-to-pay principle, on the assumption that shareholders bear the burden of corporate tax); and (3) political arguments (for example, the need to restrain corporate management power and regulate corporate activities). In chapter 2, Steven Bank describes the history of the US corporate tax in terms of four elements: revenue, shielding, avoidance, and regulation or mitigation. Chapter 3 (written by Eric Toder) presents evidence regarding the incidence of the corporate tax on economic rent and normal returns, and what it means for the distribution of the tax burden among income groups. The evidence shows that between 75 and 81 percent of the burden falls on recipients of capital income and between 18 and 25 percent on recipients of labour income. Chapter 25 (written by Daniel Shaviro) considers the future of international corporate tax. It presents recent changes in the methods of taxing MNEs as something old as well as something new. It situates these changes in the broader context of (1) back-and-forth shifts in legal policy and (2) intellectual debates about issues such as the source of income and significance of corporate residence:

> Recent calls for increased entity-level corporate income taxation of multinationals, on both a source and a residence basis, have a distinctly back-to-the-future cast. At least

27 At 2.

> as to the bottom line, they have far more in common with 1986-era thinking than with that which has often prevailed in more recent decades.[28]

Chapter 25 also notes some possible reasons to hope that countries might cooperate in efforts to restrain international tax competition. Chapter 26 (by Reuven Avi-Yonah) argues that the United States should tax corporations, but not for the traditional reasons (that is, because taxing corporations is a proxy for taxing shareholders). The rationale for taxing corporations should be same as it was in 1909, when the United States originally adopted the corporate tax—that is, the necessity of taxing monopolistic rent at progressive rates.

Parts II and IV of the book are about US corporate taxation. Chapter 5 (by George Yin) discusses the US treatment of corporate and shareholder integration. Chapter 6 (by Gregg Polsky) examines the tax implications of incorporation. Chapter 7 (by Heather M. Field) considers taxable and tax-free corporate mergers, divisions, and liquidations. Chapter 8 (by J. Cliff Fleming) covers the US international tax system. Chapter 21 (by Joshua Blank and Ari Glogower) discusses corporate tax shelters. Chapter 22 (by Amandeep S. Grewal) explains the "economic substance" doctrine. Chapter 23 (by Peter Barnes) examines the issue of corporate social responsibility, while chapter 24 (by Michael Doran) considers executive compensation and corporate governance.

Given the recent proposal to include an economic substance doctrine in the Canadian general anti-avoidance rule (GAAR), Canadian readers may find chapter 22 to be particularly relevant. Economic substance doctrine in the United States was originally a judicial anti-avoidance doctrine, codified in 2010 as section 7701(o) of the Internal Revenue Code.[29] There are two judicial approaches to economic substance. Under the extra-statutory approach, which is the majority approach, a court requires that a transaction exhibit objective economic substance or a subjective business purpose (or both), regardless of whether any statute imposes those requirements. In other words, the economic substance doctrine provides an independent rule created by common law. Under the statutory approach, the economic substance doctrine aids statutory interpretation, and, if the statute does not require economic substance in transactions, a court cannot deny the benefit that the taxpayer derived from complying with the statute. Section 7701(o) applies "in the case of any transaction to which the economic substance doctrine is relevant" but does not define when the doctrine is relevant. Therefore, the different judicial approaches continue to apply when it comes to interpreting when economic substance is relevant. Amandeep Grewal, the author of chapter 22, regards section 7701(o) as being difficult to reconcile with the extra-statutory approach because "[s]imply announcing that the economic substance doctrine establishes a prerequisite to every tax benefit will cast too wide a

28 At 433.

29 See Health Care and Education Reconciliation Act of 2010, Pub. L. no. 111-152, at section 1409; Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended.

net."[30] He also sees the challenge for the statutory approach in the following terms: the "Congressional Committees apparently wanted to codify a doctrine that allows courts considerable authority to override tax code provisions."[31]

Part III of the book includes chapters about the European Union (by Christiana HJI Panayi) and 11 countries: the United Kingdom (Michael McGowan), Germany (Joachim Englisch), France (Marilyne Sadowsky), Italy (Carlo Garbarino), Canada (Scott Wilkie), Turkey (Funda Basaran Yavaslar), New Zealand (Craig Elliffe), Japan (Yoshihiro Masui), China (Wei Cui), India (Arvind P. Datar), and Brazil (Luis Eduardo Schoueri and Guilherme Galdino). The ordering of these chapters is not explained. Though touted as "comparative," these chapters are not really comparative in the usual sense; they do not tease out the major similarities and differences among the countries, let alone explain the underlying reasons for similarities and differences.

Scott Wilkie's chapter on the Canadian context will be interesting for Canadian readers. Wilkie ends his chapter with a question: "Is the corporate tax system in the Act, if thoroughly and properly understood, the 'anti-corporate tax'?"[32] He actually answers the question in the affirmative, sort of. Viewing the corporate tax rules as a "system within a system," Wilkie writes the following:

> Elegantly the Act confronts the fiscal significance of corporations, notably as devices to facilitate the fragmentation and manipulation of economic unities, by denying it, effectively recombining corporations and shareholders except for genuine business income, that is, the kind of income from conducting business with third parties. There, the Act conveys a subsidy, a deferral of shareholder level tax until, if the income still exists to be distributed, individual shareholders receive it. That subsidy is the product of deliberate economic and fiscal policy that envisages corporate business corporations as engines of growth and opportunity deserving of public support and contribution.
>
> On the other hand, much of the regime for taxing private corporations and their shareholders, like equivalent aspects of the "foreign affiliate" (controlled foreign corporation) part of the Act, is devoted to identifying and tracking investment income despite corporate intermediation to ensure no undue deferral compared to the outcome had the corporation(s) not been involved.
>
> Regardless of popular mythology about "surplus stripping," a fundamental feature, then, of corporate taxation under the Act is to avoid corporate taxation as a silo, systemically, and to preserve income due still to be taxed at the individual shareholder level, in the condition where that will occur, that is, to policy and mitigate "surplus stripping"—the diversion of income the Act expects to be taxed at each of the corporation and shareholder levels in order for it to be adequately taxed within the system of corporation taxation.[33]

30 At 373.

31 Ibid.

32 At 249.

33 Ibid.

To advance his thesis, Wilkie also examines various rules: (1) the rules applicable to the passive income of resident private corporations, (2) the integration rules, (3) the term preferred share rules, and (4) the reorganization rules. Wilkie notes some interesting features of Canadian tax law—for example, the principle that tax law is accessory to the general or private law, and the way in which the Act strives to achieve the desired fiscal objectives without formally recharacterizing transactions on the basis of economic substance.

Generally speaking, this book is, as its title indicates, a "research handbook" on corporate income tax. The respective chapters provide succinct descriptions of corporate taxation in the 13 jurisdictions and offer thoughtful—and sometimes provocative—insights into the deficiencies and areas where reform is needed. Readers can use these chapters as starting points for their own research, and the book may help them imagine the future of corporation taxation.

JL

Craig Elliffe, ed., *International Tax at the Crossroads: Institutional and Policy Reform in the Era of Digitalisation* (Cheltenham, UK and Northampton, US: Edward Elgar, 2023)

The literature on international tax reform is rich and growing, especially literature on the reforms brought about by the G20/OECD base erosion and profit shifting (BEPS) project and the pillar 1 and pillar 2 measures introduced by the Inclusive Framework. Readers who have not been following these reforms closely can catch up by reading this book.

The book has an introductory chapter and 12 substantive chapters. The introduction notes that we live in an era of digitalization: "There is a perception that highly digitalised businesses operating scale-without-mass models derive their profits from the locations where their users or customers are located, despite having limited physical presence in such markets."[34] The current international system, as is shown by the model tax convention or the arm's-length principle, does not allocate taxing rights to market jurisdictions. As a result, there exists a "systemic income allocation problem."[35] A fundamental overhaul of the system is thus necessary. Pillar 1 is designed to provide such an overhaul: it addresses the problem by creating new taxing rights for market jurisdictions and new ways of allocating profit to replace the arm's-length principle. The era of digitalization also exposes and exacerbates another problem—namely, the "race to the bottom" tax competition among governments. Pillar 2 is designed to address this problem by requiring the profits of multinational enterprises (MNEs) to be taxed at a minimum effective tax rate of 15 percent, no matter where the profits are earned. Both pillar 1 and pillar 2, by requiring multilateral cooperation, create a new road to multilateralism. Meanwhile, some countries may prefer unilateral solutions, thus maintaining the road of unilateralism. As a result,

34 At 2.

35 Ibid.

"countries are metaphorically standing at the crossroads,"[36] deciding whether to take the road to multilateralism or to return to the road to unilateralism.

Chapters 1 to 4 examine the institutional and overarching aspects of international tax reform. In chapter 1, "Robustness and Resilience in International Tax Reform," Wolfgang Schön argues that any international tax rules must be "robust" and "resilient" in order to cope with unforeseen developments. In a turbulent world full of geopolitical conflicts, "[i]t is amazing to see to what degree the flow of international tax policy seems to be uncontaminated by the poisoned waters of those frightening geopolitical developments."[37] This lack of "contamination" may be too good to be true. The obvious dissonance between (on one hand) the confrontation and fragmentation evident in the geopolitical sphere and (on the other hand) the widespread coordination in the tax sphere leads to some "big questions": Is it possible to immunize tax policy against world politics and international crises at large? What are the incentives for countries to stick to tax coordination in spite of growing confrontations on other fronts?[38]

In chapter 2, "The Reform of the Institutional Structure of International Taxation," Philip Baker argues that the OECD should largely be replaced by new UN structures consisting of an intergovernmental commission, one or more subcommissions or subcommittees, various working parties, and special rapporteurs. In his view, there are several problems, disadvantages, and even dangers with having the OECD as the leading institution in international tax reform. For example, as a membership organization and a consensus organization, the OECD lacks democratic legitimacy and a comprehensive agenda. A new UN organization could have broader representation and legitimacy.

In chapter 3, "Unilateralism and Multilateralism in International Tax," Reuven Avi-Yonah reviews (1) the historical origin of the current efforts to draft a pillar 1 multilateral convention, (2) the role of the United States between 1918 and 2010 (for example, in leading the development of rules on foreign tax credit, foreign investment funds, the arm's-length standard, controlled foreign corporations, limitation on benefits, and the recent global intangible low-taxed income [GILTI] and the base erosion anti-abuse tax [BEAT]); and (3) the role of the European Union/Group of Twenty/OECD in leading the BEPS project and the two-pillar project. He predicts that "the prospects of Pillar 1 succeeding are not good"[39] because, among other reasons, the US Senate is unlikely to ratify the convention, and abolishing the digital services tax would be politically unpopular in some countries.

In chapter 4, "Stability of the International Tax System in a Changing World," Victoria Plekhanova and Chris Noonan argue that the current process for international tax reform is flawed and that the Inclusive Framework's narrative regarding

36 At 2.

37 At 24.

38 At 24-25.

39 At 91.

DSTs (that they will destabilize the income tax system) is unsubstantiated. They suggest that the OECD built its pillar 1 narrative on several logical fallacies, one of which is a "false cause" fallacy: it has not been proved that uncoordinated DSTs destabilize the existing system.[40]

Multilateralism is examined in chapters 5 to 9. In chapter 5, "Tax States, Jurisdiction and the Multilateral Reality," Miranda Stewart notes a multilateral trend toward a coordinated international tax regime that transcends the limitations of tax sovereignty, and she notes that modern multilateralism differs from the traditional kind in that it aims to increase taxation as opposed to simply preventing double taxation. In chapter 8, "Multilateral Tax Reform," Michael Littlewood discusses a similar trend. In chapter 6, "The Impact of the Global Minimum Tax on Tax Competition," Michael Devereux and John Vella suggest that the global minimum tax, at an effective tax rate of 15 percent, would not have been achieved without the qualified domestic minimum top-up tax (QDMTT) and that tax competition will continue through governments' use of grants and qualifying refundable tax credits. In chapter 7 ("Is the Shift to Taxation at the Point of Destination Inexorable?"), Matt Andrew and Richard Collier describe pillar 1 as a destination-based tax that represents a fundamental change. In chapter 9, "Arbitration of Tax Disputes After the BEPS Two Pillar Solution," Chris Noonan and Victoria Plekhanova discuss the mandatory binding arbitration under the two-pillar solution and argue that past experience in international trade and the gridlock experienced at the World Trade Organization does not bode well for the new international tax arbitration.

Unilateral measures are examined in the final three chapters. In chapter 10, "The Canadian Digital Services Tax," Wei Cui describes the Canadian DST as a "sector-, product-, or business-model-specific excise tax that captures economic rent realized by digital platforms characterized by non-rival technology, zero marginal cost of production, and multi-sided business models."[41] Cui argues that the economic rent captured by the DST is location-specific because it can be traced to particular locations in a principled manner. The DST can be analogized to royalties charged on natural-resource extraction. He also argues that DST is compatible with the existing WTO regime—for example, the General Agreement on Trade in Services (GATS). In chapter 11, "Legal Problems with Digital Taxes in the United States and Europe," Ruth Mason argues that a DST will result in double taxation if it is not a creditable tax against corporate income tax. Other legal problems include the potential breach of the WTO rules and the US threat of tariff retaliation. In Chapter 12, "Data as a Tax Base," Alison Pavlovich explores the possibility of taxing data and using the tax revenue to reduce wealth inequality.

In general, this book contains some insightful commentaries and thought-provoking ideas. Anyone interested in international tax law should find it very helpful.

JL

40 At 107.

41 At 246.

Craig Elliffe, "Designing a Powerful General Anti-Avoidance Rule: Reflections on the New Zealand Experience" [2023] no. 5 *British Tax Review* 704-23 (https://ssrn.com/abstract=4668585)

New Zealand has a general anti-avoidance rule (GAAR) that was originally introduced in 1878. Being older does not automatically make the NZ GAAR better than the Canadian GAAR, which was introduced in 1988. That said, Craig Elliffe explains in this paper that the NZ GAAR has much to offer and can, in fact, teach a lesson or two to the younger GAARs of the world.

The NZ GAAR functions "more as a signpost pointing out the general direction of travel rather than a detailed map."[42] The NZ Supreme Court formulated the parliamentary contemplation test in *Ben Nevis Forestry Ventures Ltd. v. CIR*.[43] This is a two-pronged test consisting of a legal analysis and a factual analysis. The legal analysis considers the purpose of the specific provisions that provide definitive taxpayer outcomes (such as a deduction), and it ensures that taxpayers' use of the provisions is consistent with the use Parliament had contemplated. The factual analysis involves examining how the taxpayer has used those provisions. The examination of the facts goes beyond the legal form of structures and documentation and considers the commercial and economic reality of the transaction that occurred or the economic substance of the arrangement. The NZ GAAR is considered effective in preventing tax avoidance.

In contrast, the Canadian GAAR is evidently not considered effective, or effective enough, because it is being amended through the addition of, among other things, an economic substance test. Will a more detailed GAAR make the GAAR more powerful? Elliffe says no:

> Reflecting on the New Zealand GAAR experience suggests that because of commonsense purposive interpretation, broad assessment of the law and facts, and the flexible, dynamic development of principles, the courts are better than the legislature in designing and implementing effective GAARs. It also means that there is no need for legislative amendments because the judicial law will continue to evolve, meeting any taxpayer ingenuity in aggressive tax planning head-on.[44]

JL

Brian J. Arnold, "Earth to OECD: You Must Be Joking—The Subject to Tax Rule of Pillar Two" (2024) 78:2 *Bulletin for International Taxation* 42-62

The "subject to tax" rule (STTR) is perhaps the least known element of the pillar 2 global minimum tax package. It was intended to allow developing countries to impose a top-up tax on certain low-taxed payments to connected non-residents. Unlike the top-up tax imposed under the income inclusion rule (IIR) or the undertaxed

42 At 705.

43 [2008] NZSC 115.

44 At 722-23.

profit rule (UTPR) (a tax that aims to bring the effective tax rate to the minimum 15 percent), the top-up tax under the STTR is intended to bring the withholding tax rate to 9 percent. The STTR has been considered the least "urgent" of these measures: the OECD/G20 Inclusive Framework released the model treaty provisions for the STTR and the multilateral convention to implement the STTR ("the STTR package") after releasing the model rules and commentaries on the IIR and UTPR.

In this article, Brian Arnold is critical of the STTR. He argues that the STTR package is unreasonably complex and unlikely to benefit developing countries much. Given that "the STTR is designed to help developing countries—notably those with lower administrative capacities—to protect their tax base"[45] and that this help was intended to compensate developing countries for agreeing to support pillar 2, the OECD must have been joking when it made the STTR so technically complex and difficult to apply. Reviewing the history and rationale of the STTR and providing a detailed description and analysis of the STTR package, Arnold argues that the STTR has been deliberately designed to produce no significant tax revenues for developing countries and "has been misleadingly portrayed by the Inclusive Framework as an important concession to developing countries."[46] He concludes with the following warning to developing countries:

> The STTR is a package of complex rules that appears at first glance to be a new self-contained tax regime that allows developing countries to impose gross-based withholding taxes on certain payments to connected persons in the other contracting state. However, when the STTR is analysed, unpacked and deciphered, the STTR can be seen for what it really is—nothing more than a sophisticated illusion of increased taxing rights for developing countries. Accordingly, developing countries should be very, very cautious about buying in to the STTR.[47]

JL

Kasper Dziurdź, "The Concept of the 'Object and Purpose' in Tax Treaty Law Based on the Vienna Convention (1969) and the Principal Purposes Test Rule" (2024) 78:3 *Bulletin for International Taxation* 110-26

In *Canada v. Alta Energy Luxembourg SARL*,[48] the Supreme Court of Canada held that the Canadian general anti-avoidance rule (GAAR) did not apply to the treaty-shopping arrangement in this case on the grounds that the object, spirit, and purpose of the pertinent provisions of the Canada-Luxembourg tax treaty[49] were not abuse.

45 At 44.

46 At 62.

47 Ibid.

48 2021 SCC 49.

49 Convention Between the Government of Canada and the Government of the Grand Duchy of Luxembourg for the Avoidance of Double Taxation and the Prevention of Fiscal Evasion with Respect to Taxes on Income and on Capital, signed at Luxembourg on September 10, 1999 (herein referred to as "the Canada-Luxembourg tax treaty").

In determining the object, spirit, and purpose (or rationale) of article 4 and of the carve-out clause in article 13(4), the court recognized the relevance of the Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties ("Vienna Convention") in interpreting Canadian tax treaties, and it emphasized the dual nature of tax treaties (that is, contractual and statutory) and the "implied exclusion" principle. Even though tax treaties are generally intended to prevent double taxation and fiscal evasion, the court found that the Canada-Luxembourg treaty was also intended, in effect, to facilitate treaty shopping as a means of encouraging foreign investment in Canada.

The Supreme Court's reasoning in *Alta Energy* may be short lived: many of Canada's treaties, including the treaty with Luxembourg, have been modified by the multilateral instrument (MLI),[50] through the inclusion of a principal purpose test (PPT). Questions about how to apply the PPT will arise. For example: Is facilitating treaty shopping a principal purpose of the carve-out in article 13(4) of the Canada-Luxembourg treaty? What is the principal purpose of defining "corporate residence" by reference to the phrase "liable to tax" in article 4? How is the principal purpose of a specific treaty provision contextualized by the principal purpose of the treaty as a whole? Kasper Dziurdź's analysis of the "object and purpose" in the Vienna Convention and of the PPT sheds light on these questions.

According to Dziurdź, treaty interpretation under the Vienna Convention involves a circular exercise: the terms of a treaty must be interpreted in their context and in the light of the treaty's object and purpose; at the same time, the object and purpose of a treaty must be identified primarily from the text of the treaty itself. Therefore, the object and purpose of a treaty is both the result of interpretation and a means of interpretation. In addition, the Vienna Convention refers to the object and purpose of a treaty as a whole. If a treaty pursues several objects and purposes, these objects and purposes may conflict with each other, requiring difficult decisions about which object and purpose should take precedence in a specific case.

As to the PPT rule, Dziurdź teases out two possible roles for it. One is to signal the importance of "object and purpose" in treaty interpretation, which is in line with the general rule of interpretation enshrined in the Vienna Convention. Another is to permit "going beyond the wording of the treaty terms, thereby deviating from the concept of the Vienna Convention (1969) and rendering the object and purpose [of] the only relevant benchmark"[51] for determining treaty abuse. His view is summarized as follows:

50 Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development, Multilateral Convention To Implement Tax Treaty Related Measures To Prevent Base Erosion and Profit Shifting, released on November 24, 2016 (herein referred to as "the MLI"). The MLI was enacted by Parliament through the Multilateral Instrument in Respect of Tax Conventions Act, SC 2019, c. 12. The MLI entered into force for Canada on December 1, 2019. Canada listed its tax treaties with 84 countries for the purposes of the MLI. Most of those countries are expected to become parties to the MLI and to list their tax treaty with Canada. A major exception is the treaty with the United States, because the United States is not a signatory to the MLI.

51 At 126.

> [T]he PPT rule gives priority to the object and purpose of the relevant provisions of a tax treaty. It thereby allows deviation from the traditional meaning of concepts, such as "residence" and "beneficial owner," by putting more weight on the object and purpose of the relevant tax treaty provisions. It does more than just reminding interpreters of the object and purpose. At the same time, the object and purpose should be reflected in the wording of the relevant treaty provisions, and not go beyond it. This prevents an independent inquiry into the object and purpose that would not be informed by, but would disregard, the agreed terms of the tax treaty. With or without the PPT rule, the main challenge remains the identification of the object and purpose of the tax treaty and its provisions.[52]

JL

André Lecours, Daniel Béland, Trevor Tombe, and Eric Champagne, eds.,
Fiscal Federalism in Canada: Analysis, Evaluation, and Prescription
(Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 2023)

This book is in memory of Richard Bird (1928-2021), a luminary of fiscal federalism studies. The book's aim is to become a "central and enduring reference on fiscal federalism in Canada" and "to stimulate both public and expert debate" in Canada.[53] The chapters are authored by some of Canada's leading scholars from various disciplines, including political science, economics, and law. They provide expert analysis of (1) the three major transfer programs in Canada (that is, equalization, the Canada health transfer, and the Canada social transfer); (2) other areas of spending, such as federal transfers to First Nations, infrastructure spending, and spending on early learning and childcare; and (3) the underlying policy and political tensions involved in these programs. They also evaluate these programs and recommend ways to address the pressures and challenges that they entail. One of the authors' ideas for reforming the governance of fiscal federalism is to create an arm's-length fiscal federal commission.

The book contains 23 chapters, of which the first is introductory. Chapters 2 to 4 examine equalization, the constitutional basis for the federal transfers, and the state of federal-provincial finances. Chapters 5-7 discuss the major federal-provincial transfers. Chapters 8 and 9 explain the two dilemmas facing fiscal federalism in Canada —namely, the complications posed by natural resource revenues and the long-term sustainability of provincial finances. Chapters 10 to 12 consider some emerging issues, such as demography and environment, and new actors, such as First Nations and municipalities. Chapters 13 to 15 focus on the municipal sector. Chapters 16 and 17 look at the funding of elementary and secondary education and of early learning and childcare. Chapters 18 to 21 focus on the provinces—for example, the Atlantic provinces in chapter 18, Ontario in chapter 20, and Alberta in chapter 21. Chapter 22 compares Canadian fiscal federalism with a standard of "best practices." Chapter 23 highlights the major contributions of this book and puts forward some recommendations for reform.

52 Ibid.

53 See "Acknowledgments."

The book's multidisciplinary approach to analysis, and its deep insights into the history, current struggles, and future direction of fiscal federalism in Canada, make it a critical read for anyone interested in this important topic. The book advances the scholarship on fiscal federalism in Canada, and it should stimulate thinking about how to make fiscal federalism work better in the face of new and emerging challenges.

JL

Henry L. Friedman, Andrew Sutherland, and Felix Vetter, *"Technological Investment and Accounting: A Demand-Side Perspective on Accounting Enrollment Declines"* (2024) (https://papers.ssrn.com/sol3/papers.cfm?abstract_id=4707807)

US data show that the percentage of graduating business majors that are accounting majors has declined from about 21 percent in 1990 to about 17 percent in 2020. Meanwhile, during the same period, the percentage of graduating business majors that are finance majors has increased from about 10 percent to about 16 percent.[54] This development is explained by Friedman, Sutherland, and Vetter through a model showing how individuals compare making different types of human capital investments: individuals face lower wages in accounting careers than they do in careers in finance or other business specialties. The reason for this, according to the paper, is that technological change has brought new tools that can substitute for accounting labour. This adversely affects the financial returns from accounting careers.

Specifically, the authors model employment and wages for accounting, finance, and other business majors as functions of software spending in a sector. The finding is that, as software spending grows, the employment of accounting majors grows, but it grows at a far slower rate than the employment of other business majors, especially finance majors. In particular, an 11 percent annual growth rate of software spending (the average for the sample period) increases the employment of accounting majors by 0.8 percent, as opposed to 2.4 percent for finance majors and 1.7 percent for other business majors.[55]

AM

54 At 24, figure 1.

55 At 4.